



Über dieses Buch

Dies ist ein digitales Exemplar eines Buches, das seit Generationen in den Regalen der Bibliotheken aufbewahrt wurde, bevor es von Google im Rahmen eines Projekts, mit dem die Bücher dieser Welt online verfügbar gemacht werden sollen, sorgfältig gescannt wurde.

Das Buch hat das Urheberrecht überdauert und kann nun öffentlich zugänglich gemacht werden. Ein öffentlich zugängliches Buch ist ein Buch, das niemals Urheberrechten unterlag oder bei dem die Schutzfrist des Urheberrechts abgelaufen ist. Ob ein Buch öffentlich zugänglich ist, kann von Land zu Land unterschiedlich sein. Öffentlich zugängliche Bücher sind unser Tor zur Vergangenheit und stellen ein geschichtliches, kulturelles und wissenschaftliches Vermögen dar, das häufig nur schwierig zu entdecken ist.

Gebrauchsspuren, Anmerkungen und andere Randbemerkungen, die im Originalband enthalten sind, finden sich auch in dieser Datei – eine Erinnerung an die lange Reise, die das Buch vom Verleger zu einer Bibliothek und weiter zu Ihnen hinter sich gebracht hat.

Nutzungsrichtlinien

Google ist stolz, mit Bibliotheken in partnerschaftlicher Zusammenarbeit öffentlich zugängliches Material zu digitalisieren und einer breiten Masse zugänglich zu machen. Öffentlich zugängliche Bücher gehören der Öffentlichkeit, und wir sind nur ihre Hüter. Nichtsdestotrotz ist diese Arbeit kostspielig. Um diese Ressource weiterhin zur Verfügung stellen zu können, haben wir Schritte unternommen, um den Missbrauch durch kommerzielle Parteien zu verhindern. Dazu gehören technische Einschränkungen für automatisierte Abfragen.

Wir bitten Sie um Einhaltung folgender Richtlinien:

- + *Nutzung der Dateien zu nichtkommerziellen Zwecken* Wir haben Google Buchsuche für Endanwender konzipiert und möchten, dass Sie diese Dateien nur für persönliche, nichtkommerzielle Zwecke verwenden.
- + *Keine automatisierten Abfragen* Senden Sie keine automatisierten Abfragen irgendwelcher Art an das Google-System. Wenn Sie Recherchen über maschinelle Übersetzung, optische Zeichenerkennung oder andere Bereiche durchführen, in denen der Zugang zu Text in großen Mengen nützlich ist, wenden Sie sich bitte an uns. Wir fördern die Nutzung des öffentlich zugänglichen Materials für diese Zwecke und können Ihnen unter Umständen helfen.
- + *Beibehaltung von Google-Markenelementen* Das "Wasserzeichen" von Google, das Sie in jeder Datei finden, ist wichtig zur Information über dieses Projekt und hilft den Anwendern weiteres Material über Google Buchsuche zu finden. Bitte entfernen Sie das Wasserzeichen nicht.
- + *Bewegen Sie sich innerhalb der Legalität* Unabhängig von Ihrem Verwendungszweck müssen Sie sich Ihrer Verantwortung bewusst sein, sicherzustellen, dass Ihre Nutzung legal ist. Gehen Sie nicht davon aus, dass ein Buch, das nach unserem Dafürhalten für Nutzer in den USA öffentlich zugänglich ist, auch für Nutzer in anderen Ländern öffentlich zugänglich ist. Ob ein Buch noch dem Urheberrecht unterliegt, ist von Land zu Land verschieden. Wir können keine Beratung leisten, ob eine bestimmte Nutzung eines bestimmten Buches gesetzlich zulässig ist. Gehen Sie nicht davon aus, dass das Erscheinen eines Buchs in Google Buchsuche bedeutet, dass es in jeder Form und überall auf der Welt verwendet werden kann. Eine Urheberrechtsverletzung kann schwerwiegende Folgen haben.

Über Google Buchsuche

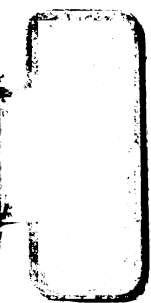
Das Ziel von Google besteht darin, die weltweiten Informationen zu organisieren und allgemein nutzbar und zugänglich zu machen. Google Buchsuche hilft Lesern dabei, die Bücher dieser Welt zu entdecken, und unterstützt Autoren und Verleger dabei, neue Zielgruppen zu erreichen. Den gesamten Buchtext können Sie im Internet unter <http://books.google.com> durchsuchen.

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

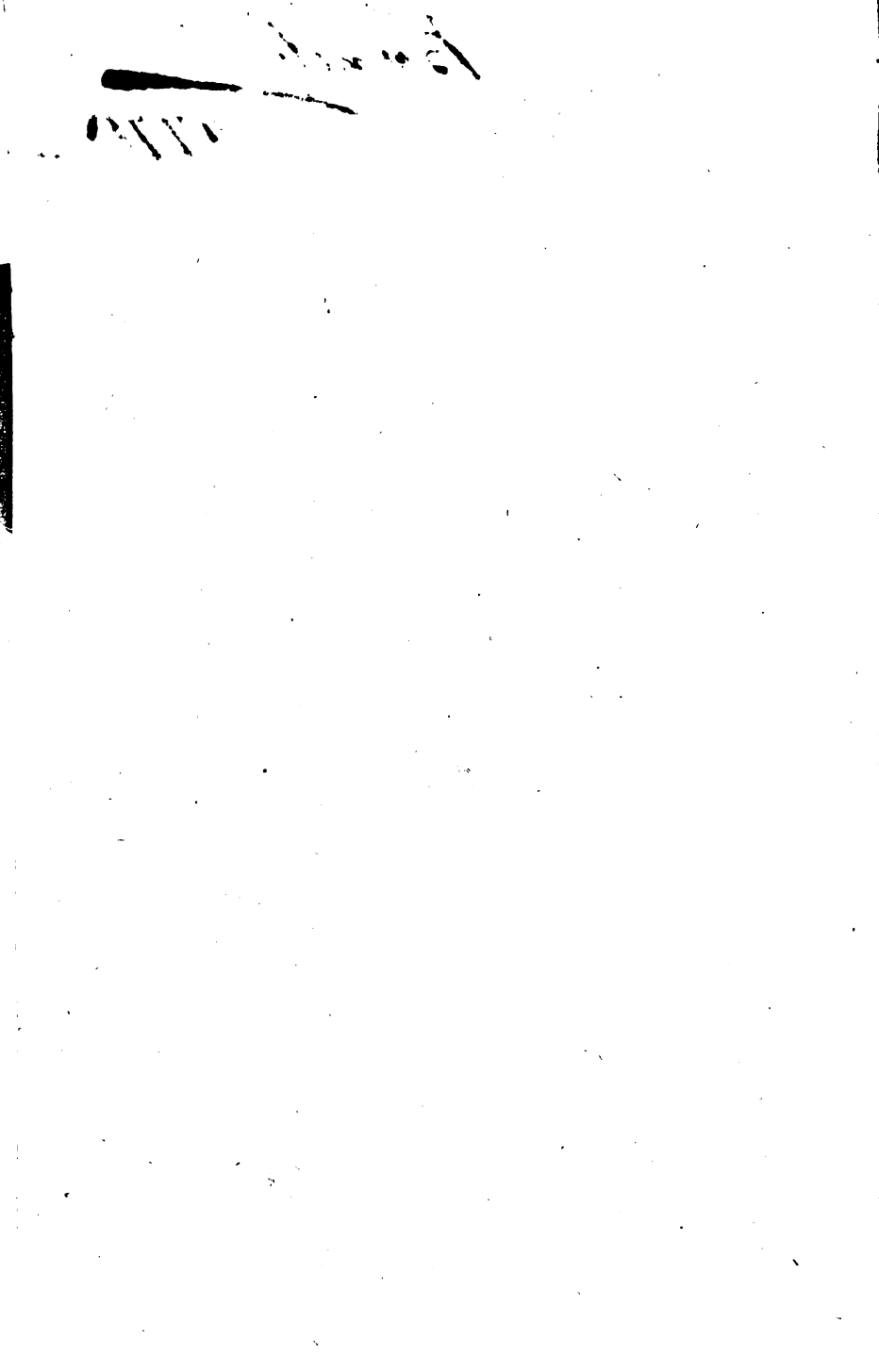
Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>





Barnaby
1778





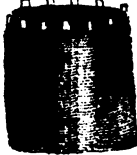
Empty Earthsack



Earth-sack



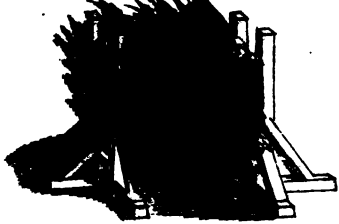
Gabion



Plan of a Gabion



Chandelier fill'd with Fascines



The manner of placing Earth-sacks on the parapet of Places of Arms to cover the men while they fire.



Fascine



Sap Fork

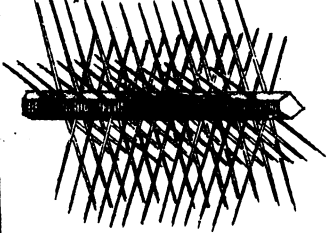


Sap Hook

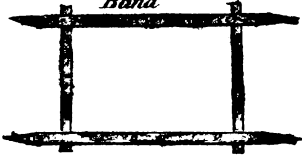


A Sawage

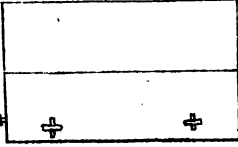
Chevaux de frise



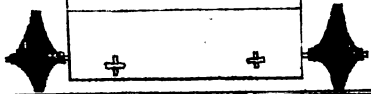
Bind



View of the mantelet from the Enemy



Profile of the mantelet



A
MILITARY COURSE
FOR THE
GOVERNMENT AND CONDUCT
OF A
BATTALION,

DESIGNED

For their REGULATIONS in QUARTER,
CAMP, or GARRISON;

WITH USEFUL

OBSERVATIONS AND INSTRUCTIONS

For their MANNER of ATTACK and DEFENCE.

Ornamented with a FRONTISPIECE and TWENTY COPPER-
PLATE PLANS.

BY THOMAS SIMES, Esq.
Late of the QUEEN'S Royal Regiment, Author of the Military
Guide, &c. Governor of the HIBERNIAN Society for the
Orphans and Children of Soldiers.

THE SECOND EDITION.

L O N D O N :

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR,

And sold by ALMON, Piccadilly; HOOPER, Ludgate-street;
RICHARDSON and URQUHART, Royal Exchange; and
WALTER, Spring-Gardens.

Price Bound, and the Plans coloured, 70s. 6d. in Boards 9s. 6d.

M. DCC. LXXVII.

RB. 23. a. 21781



TO THE
K I N G.

S I R E,

AN ardent desire to be considered, even in the smallest degree an useful subject, has induced me humbly to submit this treatise TO YOUR MAJESTY'S DISTINGUISHED JUDGMENT in the Art Military,

If as a work of public utility, it may be deemed worthy your royal inspection and unerring judgment, it will give the highest satisfaction to,

Your MAJESTY'S

most dutiful

and most faithful

subject and servant,

THOMAS SIMES.

Fort-Harvey,
Bushey, Herts,
October 1, 1777.

TO THE
OFFICERS
OF THE
ARMY.

FROM the rebellious conduct of the Americans it appears to me there is a great necessity of publishing something of this kind, for the instruction of the young and unexperienced officer—and, I hope, if what I have submitted to your respectable judgments, is not approved of, some one will soon give them fuller instructions, which for their sakes, *and my own improvement*, I should be happy to see.

I have the honour to be, with the greatest respect and esteem,

GENTLEMEN,

Your most obedient

and most obliged

humble servant,

THOMAS SIMES.

C O N T E N T S.

FIRST PART.

	Page.
O f the Choice of Arms, &c.	1
Explanation of the Names of the several Parts of the Firelock and Bayonet,	2
O f the Choice of Flints and the Fixing of them,	ib.
How to prove the Goodness of Gun-powder by the Sight, the Touch, and by the Fire,	ib.
To try Gun-powder by the Touch,	3
To restore damaged Gun-powder,	4
How to extract Salt Petre from damaged Gun-powder,	5
Of a Gunsmith for each Battalion,	6
O f Military Burials, from the Field-Marshal's to a Common Soldier,	7
Directions for a Funeral Party,	8
Effects of the Dead,	11
Military Honours due to crowned Heads,	12
Due to the Captain-General of Great Britain, Field- Marshal, General of the Empire, or of the Dutch,	ib.
Regulations of Honours to be paid by his Majesty's Forces to the General Officers of the Army,	ib.
Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Horse and Grenadier Guards, when mixed with other Troops,	14
Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Foot Guards,	ib.
Regulations for the Duty of our Horse and Foot Guards, when joined with other Troops,	15
Colours,	16
Honours to the Master General of the Ordnance,	ib.

C O N T E N T S.

	Page.
<i>Compliment due to General Officers, &c. in Garrison, Camp, or Quarters, with a Detail of Officers and Men they are intitled to,</i> - - - - -	17
<i>Of the Public Beatings of the Drum in Garrison,</i> -	18
<i>Method of going and receiving the Rounds in a Garrison,</i>	ib.
<i>Form of a Roster for detaching Battalions,</i> - - -	23
<i>The Nature of a Table of Overslags,</i> - - - -	25
<i>Of the Firings made use of against an Enemy in Garrison,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>To Fire the Street Firing,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Parapet Firing,</i> - - - - -	26
<i>Execution Parties,</i> - - - - -	27
<i>Standing Orders for a Guard who mount over Prisoners of War, or otherwise,</i> - - - - -	28
<i>Of the Town-Major and Town-Adjutant,</i> - - -	31
<i>A Table for the several Duties in a Garrison, to be kept by the Town-Major, Town-Adjutant, and the Adjutant of Corps,</i> - - - - -	34
<i>Of the Command of a Town or Garrison,</i> - - -	35
<i>Precautions a Governour or Commandant of a Garrison should take in Time of War,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Of Stores, and what required for a Month's Siege,</i>	38
<i>Of Provisions for a Garrison, &c.</i> - - - - -	39
<i>During a Siege,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Of Sallies,</i> - - - - -	40
<i>Remarks upon Sallies,</i> - - - - -	41
<i>Siege raised,</i> - - - - -	42
<i>Instructions, Cautions, and Observations, &c.</i> -	ib.
<i>Of Capitulation,</i> - - - - -	48
<i>Return of the Troops under the Command of at the Capitulation of , with a List of the Ships in the Harbour taken, burnt, sunk, and destroyed, &c.</i> - - - - -	55
<i>Return of Cannon, Bombs, Grenades, &c. at the Capitulation,</i> - - - - -	56
	To

C O N T E N T S:

	Page.
<i>To prove the Cannon taken, if fit for Use, - - -</i>	57
<i>Explanation of some of the most material Terms which are used in that Part of War which is called a Siege, - - - - -</i>	ib.

S E C O N D P A R T.

<i>Of Regimental Books, - - - - -</i>	68
<i>Government's Book, - - - - -</i>	ib.
<i>Regulations for doing Duty, - - - - -</i>	69
<i>Regulations for the Colours, Cloathing, &c. - - -</i>	70
<i>Directions for making up of the Contingent Bill, -</i>	77
<i>Warrant for regulating the Non-effective Fund,</i>	78
<i>Warrant for regulating the Attendance of Officers,</i>	82
<i>Warrant for regulating the Attendance of Officers on Foreign Stations, - - - - -</i>	86
<i>Warrant for regulating the Recruiting and Reviewing of the several Regiments of Foot upon Foreign Stations, - - - - -</i>	88
<i>Of purchasing and selling Commissions, - - - - -</i>	91
<i>General Book, - - - - -</i>	92
<i>Description of Recruits entertained, &c. - - - - -</i>	93
<i>General Return of the Country, Size, Age, and Time of Service of the Men, including Serjeants, Corporals, Drummers, Fifers, and Music, - - - - -</i>	94
<i>General Return of the Names, Country, Age, Time, and Service of the Officers, with the Dates of the several Commissions each Officer has had, - - -</i>	95
<i>Remarks made by the Reviewing General, - - - - -</i>	96
<i>Return of Quarters through which his Majesty's Regiment of Foot has marched from to with the Number of Men and Horses they are capable of containing as a marching Quarter, - - -</i>	98
<i>Return of Non-commissioned Officers, Private Men, Bas Horses, and Field Pieces, &c. killed, wounded, missing,</i>	

C O N T E N T S.

	Page.
<i>missing, and taken at the Battle of</i> , with	
<i>Remarks,</i> - - - - -	93
<i>Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. who have died,</i> - - - - -	100
<i>Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. discharged,</i>	101
<i>Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. who have deserted,</i> - - - - -	102
<i>Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. tried by Court-Martial,</i> - - - - -	103
<i>Succession of Non-commissioned Officers, &c.</i> - - - - -	104
<i>Succession of Drummers, Fifers, Music, and Private Men,</i> - - - - -	105
<i>Monthly Return of his Majesty's Regiment of Foot,</i> - - - - -	106
<i>Return of the Officers present and absent made on the 14th of the Month,</i> - - - - -	107
<i>Companies Book,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Roll to be kept of the Non-commissioned Officers and Men of each Company, &c.</i> - - - - -	108
<i>Morning Report,</i> - - - - -	109
<i>Squad Roll,</i> - - - - -	110
<i>A Weekly Pay Note,</i> - - - - -	111
<i>Return of Provision bought for Company,</i>	112
<i>Report of the Barracks, Messes, and Regimental Infirmary,</i> - - - - -	113
<i>Inspection Report of Cloaths and Necessaries, &c. in Company,</i> - - - - -	114
<i>Inspection Report of Arms, Accoutrements, &c. in Company,</i> - - - - -	115
<i>Return of Ammunition, Flints, &c. in Company,</i>	116
<i>Form of Return which Officers employed on the Recruiting Service are to send,</i> - - - - -	117
<i>Method of sending for the Colours,</i> - - - - -	118
<i>Turning out of the Line,</i> - - - - -	120
<i>Forming and returning the Picquet,</i> - - - - -	121
<i>Adjutants's</i>	

C O N T E N T S.

	Page.
<i>Adjutant's Book,</i> - - - - -	123
<i>Monthly Return of Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, Pioneers, Bas Men, Officers Servants, &c.</i>	124
<i>Morning Report of the State of the Regiment,</i>	125
<i>Field Return of the Regiment,</i> - - - - -	126
<i>Regimental Duty Tables for Captains Guard, Picquet or Reserve Guard, and Courts-Martial,</i> -	127
<i>Explanation, &c. of the Tables,</i> - - - - -	128
<i>Quarter-Master's Book,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Return of Cloathing, &c. in Store,</i> - - - - -	129
<i>Of the Cloathing, &c.</i> - - - - -	130
<i>Regulations of Prices fixed for Regimental Work done by the Taylors of the Regiment,</i> - - - - -	132
<i>Return of Arms, Accoutrements, Colours, Drums, &c. of the Regiment,</i> - - - - -	133
<i>Return of Ammunition, Flints, &c. in Store of the Regiment,</i> - - - - -	134
<i>Proportion of Ammunition for a Battalion of Nine Hundred Men, &c.</i> - - - - -	135
<i>Of Forage and the Ration,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Daily Allowance of Provision,</i> - - - - -	136
<i>American Weekly Allowance of Provision last War for One Person,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Proportion of Rations,</i> - - - - -	137
<i>Allowance of Straw and Firing in Ireland judged necessary for each Tent,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Breadth and Depth of Ground necessary to be taken up for Encamping a Battalion of Ten Companies with Field Pieces,</i> - - - - -	138
<i>Common Dimensions of the Tent for a Captain or Subaltern,</i> - - - - -	140
<i>Manner of Hutting, &c.</i> - - - - -	141
<i>Pay-Master's Book,</i> - - - - -	142
	<i>Form</i>

C O N T E N T S.

	Page.
<i>Form of an Abstract for each Company to be given by the Pay-Master to the Commanding Officers of Companies every Two Months,</i> - - - - -	143
<i>Form of an Abstract to be settled by the Pay-Master and Agent of the Regiment every Two Months,</i> - - - - -	144
<i>Abstract of the Respite of each Company,</i> - - - - -	145
<i>Surgeon's Book,</i> - - - - -	146
<i>Of the Regulations and Treatment of the Sick of a Regimental Infirmary, &c.</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Return of the Sick, &c.</i> - - - - -	148
<i>Report of the Sick and Lame,</i> - - - - -	151
<i>Regulations of Diet,</i> - - - - -	153
<i>Of the Custom established amongst the Romans for preserving Health,</i> - - - - -	154

T H I R D P A R T,

<i>Of Discipline,</i> - - - - -	155
<i>Of Recruiting, with Observations,</i> - - - - -	156
<i>Lord Camden's Opinion on Apprentices enlisting for Soldiers,</i> - - - - -	158
<i>Remarks upon Recruiting,</i> - - - - -	160
<i>Of Messing and the Advantages attending it, &c.</i> - - - - -	162
<i>Officers Scheme for Mess for Dinner and Supper in Camp,</i> - - - - -	164
<i>Of Desertion; &c.</i> - - - - -	165
<i>Form for Advertising of a Deserter,</i> - - - - -	166
<i>Remarks upon Deserters,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Attorney General's Opinion concerning Soldiers making away with their Cloaths or Necessaries,</i> - - - - -	167
<i>Of Courts-Martial, Punishments, &c.</i> - - - - -	169

F O U R T H

CONTENTS.

FOURTH PART.

	Page.
<i>Of Saluting,</i> - - - - -	174
<i>Of the Drill, &c.</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Signals,</i> - - - - -	177
<i>Of Firings,</i> - - - - -	178
<i>Of Fixing up their Firelocks,</i> - - - - -	179
<i>Of the Manual Exercise, with Observations,</i> - - - - -	180
<i>Manual Exercise, &c.</i> - - - - -	181
<i>Of the Column,</i> - - - - -	191
<i>Of Manœuvres,</i> - - - - -	195

FIFTH PART.

<i>Precautions to be taken in Marching of the Battalion,</i> - - - - -	196
<i>Of Parties,</i> - - - - -	197
<i>Of Spies,</i> - - - - -	198
<i>Of Guides,</i> - - - - -	200
<i>Of the Advance Guard,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Of the Baggage Guard,</i> - - - - -	201
<i>Of the Rear Guard,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Of Ambuscades, with a Remark,</i> - - - - -	202
<i>Orders of Regulations to be observed by the Officers Commanding the Companies on Board of each Transport,</i> - - - - -	204
<i>Order of Embarking in Flat-bottom Boats,</i> - - - - -	206
<i>Regulations for Debarking a Battalion on an Hostile Shore,</i> - - - - -	207

SIXTH

CONTENTS

SIXTH PART.

	Page.
<i>Of the Choice of Men to compose the Grenadier and Light-Infantry Companies, with Remarks,</i>	210
<i>Of the Choice of Pioneers,</i>	212
<i>Of the Choice of Camp-colour Men,</i>	ib.
<i>Of Bas-Men,</i>	ib.
<i>Directions for the Conduct and Government of the Soldier,</i>	213
<i>To clean the Barrel,</i>	216
<i>To clean Accoutrements,</i>	ib.
<i>Of the Conduct and Duty of the Corporal,</i>	217
<i>Return of the Men's Quarters, &c.</i>	218
<i>Of the Choice and Duty of a Serjeant,</i>	219
<i>Of the Choice of Drill Serjeants and Corporals,</i>	221
<i>Of the Choice of a Music Master, Drum and Fife Major,</i>	ib.
<i>Of the Choice and Duty of a Quarter-Master,</i>	222
<i>Of the Quarter-Master Serjeant,</i>	223
<i>Of the Choice and Duty of a Serjeant-Major,</i>	224
<i>Roster to regulate the Duty of Private Men,</i>	225
<i>Explanation,</i>	226
<i>Duty Roll for Serjeants,</i>	227
<i>Of the Choice and Duty of the Adjutant,</i>	228
<i>Of the Surgeon and his Mate,</i>	ib.
<i>Of the Chaplain, his Attendance, &c.</i>	229
<i>Of the Choice and Conduct of an Ensign,</i>	230
<i>Of the Lieutenant,</i>	234
<i>Of the Captain,</i>	235
<i>Of the Major,</i>	237
<i>Of the Colonel,</i>	238
<i>Of Battles,</i>	240
<i>Of Fortune,</i>	241

SEVENTH

C O N T E N T S.

S E V E N T H P A R T.

	Page.
<i>Standing orders for a Battalion,</i> - - - - -	242
<i>Firings,</i> - - - - -	264
<i>Form the Square,</i> - - - - -	265
<i>Reduce ditto,</i> - - - - -	266
<i>Second Method of forming and reducing the Square,</i>	267
<i>To form an oblong Square by Companies on the March,</i>	268
<i>Reduce ditto,</i> - - - - -	269
<i>To form Column by Companies from the Center,</i> -	ib.
<i>To form Battalion,</i> - - - - -	270
<i>Second Method,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Third Method of forming Column,</i> - - - - -	271
<i>From the Right advance by Files,</i> - - - - -	272
<i>To reduce,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>To advance from the Right by Grand Divisions,</i>	ib.
<i>To reduce,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>To advance from the Center of the Battalion,</i> -	ib.
<i>To reduce,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>To advance from the Center of Wings,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>To reduce,</i> - - - - -	273
<i>From the Center of Grand Divisions advance by Files,</i>	ib.
<i>To reduce,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>From Grand Divisions form Companies, &c.</i> - -	ib.
<i>From three Ranks to form two,</i> - - - - -	274
<i>From two Ranks to form three,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Second Method,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>From three Ranks form six,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>From six Ranks form three,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>When a Battalion disperses, how it forms itself again,</i>	275
<i>To arms,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Battalion passing the Bridge,</i> - - - - -	276
<i>Forming Battalion,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Battalion re-passing the Bridge,</i> - - - - -	ib.
<i>Battalion</i>	

C O N T E N T S.

	Page.
<i>Battalion passing Defile with Cannon,</i>	277
<i>Forming Battalion,</i>	ib.
<i>A Retreat and passing Wood in Indian File,</i>	278
<i>If attacked by Cavalry and have Wood and Water in the Rear,</i>	ib.
<i>Battalion marching by Files on a Road, &c.</i>	279
<i>Battalion marching by Files through the Center of the Wood, &c.</i>	ib.
<i>Of the March and Order of the Grenadier and Light-Infantry Companies, &c. for George Village,</i>	280
<i>Of a Battalion of the Enemy ordered to Charlotte Village,</i>	281
<i>The Battalion with Field Pieces escorting Ammunition across a Plain,</i>	282
<i>To form a fixed Camp,</i>	ib.
<i>Attack of a Barrack,</i>	283
<i>Fortifying a Wall and defending a Barrack,</i>	284
<i>The Time and Number of Men required for the Construction of a Redoubt,</i>	285
<i>Postscript,</i>	286

E R R A T A.

Page	2,	line	11,	for fire loop read first loop.
	6,		9,	for to nitre read the nitre.
	147,		11,	for Surgeons read Surgeon.
	234,		26,	for Lieutenants read Lieutenant.

SUBSCRIBERS,

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS

HENRY FREDERICK,

Duke of Cumberland and Strathern, Earl of
Dublin, Ranger of Windsor Great Park, and
Vice-Admiral of the White Squadron, K. G.

A.

RIGHT Honourable Earl Ailesbury
Duke of Argyle, Lieut. General, Colonel of the Royal,
and Commander in Chief in Scotland, Two Books
Lieut. Charles Abbot, South Hants Militia
Second Lieut. Ackroy, Marines.
Capt. Benjamin Adair, Marines
Mr. Patience Thomas Adams, Busby, Herts
Ensign Francis Aikell, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment
of Foot
Col. William Alcock, Militia, Waterford †
Capt. William Alcock, late of the 52d Regiment of Foot †
Lieut. Richard Alcock, 66th Regiment of Foot
Lieut. John Fortescue Aland, Berkshire Militia
Second Lieut. Alder, Marines
Major George Alexander, late of the 2d (or Queen's Royal)
Regiment of Foot †
Altham, Esq; of Chesfield, Hertfordshire
Lieut. and Adjut. Henry Anderfon, Marines
Mr. Andrews, Stanmore, Middlesex
Lieut. Charles Arbuthnot, 66th Regiment of Foot
Lieut. Robert Arbuthnot, 31st Regiment of Foot
Lieut. and Adjut. Thomas Archbold, Marines †
Lieut. General Bigo Armstrong, Colonel of the 3th (or the
King's) Regiment of Foot
Capt. Thomas Arnot, Marines
Capt. Robert Astle, Leicestershire Militia

B.

Cornet Lord Bamff, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of Dragoons
Right Honourable William Wildman Lord Viscount Barrington,
Secretary at War, and M. P. †

T

Lord

S U B S C R I B E R S.

Lieut. Lord John Bellenden, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Capt. Joseph Baddeley, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Second Lieut. Balfour, Marines
 Lieut. John Balfour, the Royal
 Second Lieut. George Ball, Marines
 Second Lieut. Baldwin, Marines
 Ensign Philip Bainbriggs, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment
 of Foot
 Capt. Henry Banks, Royal Navy †
 Lieut. Col. James Barker, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment †
 Lieut. Edward Baynes, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment
 of Foot
 Mr. Becket, Adelphi, Strand, Twenty-five Books
 Major General John Bell, Marines †
 Lieut. James Berkeley, Marines
 Capt. George Bernard, 6th (Inniskilling) Regiment of Dragoons
 Lieut. Col. Albemarle Bertie, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards †
 Second Lieut. Bidlake, Marines
 Second Lieut. Binks, Marines
 Lieut. Col. Thomas Bishopp, Cold Stream of Guards, and
 Equerry to his Majesty †
 Lieut. John Blagrave, Berkshire Militia
 Lieut. Peter Boiffieur, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Cornelius Bolton, Esq; M. P. †
 Lieut. Col. Mason Bolton, 8th Regiment of Foot †
 Cornet Bolton, Royal Regiment of Horse Guards
 Capt. Richard Bowls, late of the Second Troop of Horse
 Guards †
 Col. John Braithwaite, India Service
 Cornet G. C. Braithwaite, 1st (or the King's) Dragoon
 Guards
 Major Arthur Hill Brice, 7th Regiment of Foot, or Royal
 English Fusiliers †
 Capt. Richard Bright, Marines
 Lieut. Henry Bromley, Marines
 Honourable Lieut. Col. Thomas Bruce, 65th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Richard Bulkeley, 59th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. William Burd, Marines
 Lieut. James Burn, late of the 52d Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. and Adjut. James Burges, Hertfordshire Militia
 Mr. G. Burnett, N^o 134, Strand, Twenty-five Books
 Mr. Peter Burrell, Pay Office, Whitehall
 Lieut. Arthur Buttle, Marines
 George Byng, Esq; M. P. †

C.

Right Honourable Capt. George Viscount Chewton, 3d Regi-
 ment of Foot Guards and M. P.
 Right Honourable Earl Cholmondeley, Lord Lieutenant and
 Custos Rotulorum of the County of Chester, Two Books
 Right Honourable John Smyth Deburgh, Earl of Clanricarde,
 Two Books †

Right

S U B S C R I B E R S .

- Right Honourable Lieut. Col. Lord Thomas Pelham Clinton,
 1st Regiment of Foot Guards and M.P. Two Books
 Right Honourable Col. Lord Viscount Cranborne, Hertford-
 shire Militia, Lord Lieutenant of the County, and M. P.
 Lieut. Col. Sir Richard Chase, Bart. Hertfordshire Militia
 Major Sir Robert Salusbury Cotton, Bart. Royal Cheshire
 Militia
 Lieut. General Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. 12th Regiment of
 Foot, Governor of Limerick, Groom of the Bedchamber
 to his Royal Highness the Duke of Gloucester, and M. P.
 Two Books †
 Lieut. General Sir Eyre Coote, K. B. 37th Regiment of Foot,
 and M.P.
 Lieut. Col. James Callander, 67th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Campbell Callander, 67th Regiment of Foot
 Capt. John Callow, 3d (or the King's own) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Lieut. General Henry Fletcher Campbell, 35th Regiment of
 Foot †
 Lieut. Col. John Campbell, Half Pay †
 Lieut. Col. John Campbell, 22d Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. Duncan Campbell, Marines
 Capt. John Campbell, Marines
 Cornet John Campbell, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Lieut. William Augustus Cane, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Re-
 giment of Foot
 Richard Capper, Esq; Bushey, Herts
 Col. James Capper, India Service, and Commissary General at
 Madras
 Lieut. William Cartwright, 10th Regiment of Dragoons
 Cornet John Carnegie, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Mr. George Carrol, Bookfeller, Catherine-street, Six Books
 Lieut. Col. Walter Carruthers, Marines †
 Ensign William Carruthers, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Second Lieut. Caffell, Marines
 Cornet Chadwick, 3d (or King's own) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Anthony Chamier, Esq;
 Capt. Lieut. and Quarter Master Bartholomew Chaundy,
 Marines †
 Ensign Napier Christie, 3d Regiment of Foot Guards
 Major General Thomas Clarke, Coldstream Regiment of Foot
 Guards
 Capt. Thomas Clarke, 3d (or King's own) Regiment of
 Foot
 Capt. Stephen Clarke, London Militia †
 Second Lieut. Alexander Clarke, Marines
 Second Lieut. Molefworth Cleiland, Royal Regiment of Ar-
 tillery †
 Lieut. William Clowes, 6th (or Iniskilling) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Lieut. William Colvill, Half Pay, Two Books †
 Ensign James Alexander Colvill, 59th Regiment of Foot
Capt

S U B S C R I B E R S.

Capt. Conway
 Col. George John Cooke, Western Battalion of Middlesex
 Militia, Two Books †
 Second Lieut. John Coultherst, Marines
 John Coutts, Banker, Strand
 Ensign George Coussmaker, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards
 Lieut. Col. Michael Cox, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards †
 Lieut. General Francis Craig, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards, and
 Groom of the Bedchamber to his Royal Highness the Duke
 of Cumberland
 Lieut. General Robert Cuninghame, Colonel of the 14th Re-
 giment of Foot, Governor of Kinfales, and M. P. †

D.

Otway, Lord Defart, late of the Royal †
 Right Honourable Lord Dunkellin
 Chevalier De Pinto, Envoy Extraordinary from his most
 faithful Majesty to the Court of Great Britain, Two Books
 Major Peter Dambon, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot
 Captain Willam Dansey, 33d Regiment of Foot †
 Major William Dalrymple, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment
 of Foot
 Capt. Hugh Dalrymple, the Royal
 Capt. James Dalrymple, 43d Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Thomas Dalton, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Second Lieut. William Davids, Marines
 Mr. John Davis, War Office
 Lieut. William Dawson, South Hants Militia
 Col. John Deaken, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards, and
 Groom of the Bedchamber to his Royal Highness the Duke
 of Cumberland †
 Honourable Lieut. Col. J. T. Deburgh, 1st Regiment of
 Foot Guards
 Lieut. Governor of St. John's in the Gulph of St. Laurence,
 Thomas Desbrissay, Esq; †
 Second Lieut. William Charles Dexter, Marines
 Mr. James Dixwell, Printer and Bookfeller, St. Martin's-lane
 Rev. Henry Dodwell, Chaplain, Berkshire Militia
 Lieut. Col. Robert Donkin, 23d Regiment of Foot, or Royal
 Welch Fuzileers †
 Capt. William Anne Douglafs, 3d Regiment of Foot Guards
 Lieut. George Douglafs, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Capt. Douglas
 Mr. John Dring
 Capt. Francis D'Oyly, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards
 Capt. Alexander Duffee, 58th Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. James Duffee, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards
 Ensign Thomas Dunckerley, Hants Militia
 Lieut. Col. Ralph Dundafs, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Capt. John Durour, Coldstream Regiment of Foot Guards
 Capt. Thomas Duval, Marines

Right

S U B S C R I B E R S .

E.

- Right Honourable Lieut. General Archibald Montgomery, Earl of Eglington, 51st Regiment of Foot, and Governor of Dumbarton, Three Books
 Right Honourable Earl Erroll, High Constable of Scotland †
 Right Honourable Lieut. General G. Augustus Elliot, 15th (or the King's) Regiment of Light Dragoons, and Governor of Gibraltar †
 Capt. J. William Egerton, 7th (or Queen's) Regiment of Dragoons †
 Capt. Thomas Edgar, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Bingham Ellifson, late of the 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. George Elives, Berkshire Militia
 Capt. Nathaniel English, Marines
 James Esdaile, Esq; Bunhill-row, London
 Second Lieut. Evelyn, Marines
 Lieut. and Adjut. Henry Evans, Berkshire Militia
 Lieut. Hardy Eustace, 1st Regiment of Horse †

F.

- Right Honourable General Lord Viscount Falmouth, Capt. of the Yeomen of the Guard, &c. Two Books
 Right Honourable Capt. Lord Viscount Fairford, Hertfordshire Militia, and M. P.
 Right Honourable Lord Viscount Fielding, Military Academy, Chelsea
 Right Honourable Lord Forbes, Military Academy, Chelsea
 Sir William Forbes, Baronet
 Mr. William Faden, Two Books, Geographer, Charing-cross
 Second Lieut. Robert Hill Farmer, Marines
 Major General William Faucitt, 3d Regiment of Foot Guards, Deputy Adjutant General of his Majesty's Forces, and Governor of Gravesend and TilburyForts †
 Lieut. Everard Fawkener, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Cornet George Fenwick, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of Dragoons
 Lieut. Col. Lewis Feyrac, late of the 18th Regiment of Foot †
 Honourable Lieut. General Charles Fitzroy, Col. of the 3d (or King's own) Regiment of Dragoons, Vice-Chamberlain to the Queen, and M. P.
 Honourable Lieut. General Fitzwilliam, 2d Regiment of Horse †
 Major General Hezekiah Fleming, Half Pay, late of 73d Regiment of Foot
 Capt. John Fleming, South Hants Militia, and M.P.
 Col. John Fletcher, 32d Regiment of Foot
 Capt. Henry Fletcher, Marines
 Capt. James Flint, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Foley, Marines
 Lieut. Gerrald Fortescue, 25th Regiment of Foot

SUBSCRIBERS.

Lieut. Col. Thomas Fowke, 3d Regiment of Foot Guards,
and Equerry to his Royal Highness the Duke of Cumberland,
Two Books †

Lieut. Col. Christopher French, 2d Regiment of Foot
Second Lieut. Furzer, Marines

G.

Duke of Grafton, Lord Lieutenant and Custos Rotulorum of
the County of Suffolk, High Steward of Dartmouth, K. G.
&c. Three Books.

Most Honourable Marquis of Granby, Col. of the Leicestershire Militia, and M. P.

Right Honourable Lord Viscount Grimston, Three Books

Lieut. Col. Christopher Gauntlet, Marines

Richard Gale, Esq; Hackney

Capt. Samuel Gamble, Leicestershire Regiment of Militia

Lieut. William Glasscot, Half Pay, late of the 2d (or Queen's
Royal) Regiment of Foot †

Honourable Lieut. Col. Cosmo Gordon, 3d Regiment of Foot
Guards †

Major Charles Gordon, 11th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Archibald Kinlock Gordon, 65th Regiment of Foot

Quarter Master David Gordon, 59th Regiment of Foot

Lieut. Thomas Gore, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of
Dragoons

Charles Gould, Esq; Judge Advocate General

Abraham Gooding, Esq; London

Capt. Gregor Grant, 58th Regiment of Foot †

Major George Gray, 59th Regiment of Foot

Mr. Edward Gray, Queen-street

Capt. and Adjut. Francis Grose, Surry Militia

Major Thomas Groves, Marines †

Ensign Thomas Grove, Berkshire Militia

Capt. William Gun, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of
Dragoons

Lieut. Thomas Gwyllyn, 59th Regiment of Foot

H.

Right Honourable Francis Hastings, Earl Huntingdon, F. R. S.
Three Books,

Sir Thomas Heron, Bart. late of the 16th Regiment of Foot †
Thomas Hall, Esq;

Lieut. Col. Otho Hamilton, 50th Regiment of Foot †

Capt. Isaac Hamon, Half Pay, late of the 2d (or Queen's Royal)
Regiment of Foot †

Second Lieut. Leonard Hamon, Royal Artillery

Second Lieut. Frederick Hamon, Marines

Hugh Joseph Hansard, Esq; Gerard-street

Lieut. Richard Hansard, 60th Regiment of Foot

Lieut. John Harrison, 59th Regiment of Foot

Ensign

S U B S C R I B E R S .

Ensign Joseph Hardy, 65th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. General Edward Harvey, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment
 of Dragoons, Adjut. General of his Majesty's Forces, Go-
 vernor of Portsmouth, and M. P. Six Books †
 Lieut. Col. Anthony Haslam, 5th Regiment of Foot
 Capt. William Hawtayne, 3d Regiment of Foot Guards, Two
 Books
 Capt. Adam Hay, 31st Regiment of Foot
 Capt. Alexander Hay, 7th Regiment of Foot, or Royal
 English Fuzileers
 Capt. Andrew Goater Haynes, South Hants Militia
 Cornet James Roper Head, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Ensign George Headham, 59th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. William Heath, Esq; Hertfordshire Militia
 Ensign Joseph Henegan, Independent Company at Tilbury
 Fort
 Lieut. Col. Charles Hefilrige, Leicestershire Militia
 Capt. Thomas Hewetson, 59th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Robert Hewetson, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Lieut. Edward Hill, Marines
 Mr. William Hinton, Copper Plate Printer, Racquet-court,
 Fleet-street, Two Books
 Second Lieut. Hobbs, Marines
 Lieut. General Studholme Hodgson, of the 4th Regiment of
 Foot, and Governor of Fort St. George and Fort Augustus,
 Two Books †
 Ensign William Hodgson, Coldstream Regiment of Foot Guards
 Mr. Christopher Holdsworth, Lyon's-inn
 Mr. William Holdsworth, Park-street
 Capt. James Holwell, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of
 Foot
 Lieut. Col. David Home, Lieut. Governor of Chester †
 Major Charles Home, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Capt. Walter Home, 7th Regiment, or Royal English Fu-
 zileers
 General Philip Honeywood, 4th Regiment of Horse, Gover-
 nor of Hull, and M.P.
 Major Jacob Houblon, Hertfordshire Militia
 Capt. John Houblon, Hertfordshire Militia
 Second Lieut. Hunt, Marines

I.

Right Honourable Lieut. General Sir John Irwine, K. B. Col.
 of 57th Regiment of Foot, Commander in Chief in Ireland,
 and M. P. Three Books †
 Capt. Lieut. John Jackson, Half Pay, late of the 2d (or Queen's
 Royal) Regiment of Foot †
 Lieut. and Adjut. John Jackson, Marines

T †

The

SUBSCRIBERS.

The Rev. Dr. Ibbetson, Archdeacon of St. Albans, and Prebendary of Lincoln, Bushey, Herts
James Ibbetson, Esq; of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister at Law
Denzey Ibbetson, Esq; Bushey, Herts
Lieut. Carr Ibbetson, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
Lieut. John Jekyle, Marines
Capt. Jenkins, ditto
Lieut. General James Johnston, 11th Regiment of Dragoons, and Governor of Quebec
Capt. Robert Johnston, late of the 13th Regiment of Dragoons †
Major General Valentine Jones, 62d Regiment of Foot, Three Books †
Major General Daniel Jones, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot
Major Robert Jones, Glamorganshire Militia
William Ireland, Esq; Islington

K.

Ensign William Keppell, 25th Regiment of Foot
Second Lieut. Kellow, Marines

L.

Lord A. Lennox
Right Honourable Lieut. Marquis of Lindsay, 7th Regiment of Foot, or Royal English Fuzileers
Sir Gilfred Lawson, Bart. late of the 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot
Major Peter Labellier, Half Pay, late of the 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot †
Major Henry Lamb, Western Middlesex Militia †
William Lane, Esq; Leadenhall-street †
Lieut. John Lacy, South Hants Militia
Capt. John Leaver, late of the 46th Regiment of Foot †
Honourable Cornet Charles Gunter Legge, 10th Regiment of Dragoons
Lieut. Richard Leverfuch, South Hants Militia
Matthew Lewis, Esq; Deputy Secretary at War
Major William Lewis, Marines
Cornet Thomas Liddersdale, 3d (or King's own) Regiment of Dragoons
Major General Henry Lister, Coldstream Regiment of Foot Guards
Lieut. and Adjut. Thomas Lloyd, 7th Regiment, or Royal English Fuzileers
Mr. Lochee and Twenty Members, Military Academy †
Lieut. Charles Long, Berkshire Militia
Capt. Edward Loveden, Berkshire Militia
Capt. James Lovibond, 3d (or King's own) Regiment of Dragoons

Lieut.

S U B S C R I B E R S.

Lieut. Col. Robert Laurie, 7th (or Queen's) Regiment of Dragoons, M. P. †
 James Lowther, Esq; M. P.
 Major Henry Lyon, 11th Regiment of Dragoons

M.

Col. Sir Herbert Mackworth, Bart. Glamorganshire Militia, and M. P. Three Books †
 Sir William Middleton, Bart. late of the Royal Regiment of Horse Guards †
 Major General John Mackenzie, Marines, Two Books †
 Lieut. John M'Combe, South Hants Militia
 Capt. Hector M'Neal, Marines †
 Lieut. William Madden, Marines
 Capt. Samuel Malcher, late of the 2d, (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot, Two Books †
 Capt. Westwang March, 32d Regiment of Foot
 Capt. Benjamin Marlow, Royal Navy
 Second Lieut. Benjamin Marlow, Royal Regiment of Artillery
 Lieut. Col. Thomas Marriot, Marines †
 Honourable Charles Marham, L. L. D. one of the Vice-Presidents to the Society for the Encouragement of Arts and Manufactures, and M. P. Three Books †
 Lieut. Col. John Martin, Marines
 Major General Masley, 27th Regiment of Foot
 Major General Edward Maxwell, 67th Regiment of Foot
 Surgeon Mr. Thomas Mears, South Hants Militia
 Second Lieut. Charles Mencee, Marines
 Capt. Henry Meredith, Merchant Service
 Capt. William Mitford, South Hants Militia
 Capt. Eyre Robert Mingay, 66th Regiment of Foot †
 Cornet George Mitchell, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Capt. John Mompeffon, 8th (or the King's) Regiment of Foot
 Honourable Lieut. General Robert Monckton, 17th Regiment of Foot, and Governor of Berwick, Four Books †
 Second Lieut. Monier, Marines
 Second Lieut. Charles Moody, Marines
 Lieut. Frank Moore, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Lieut. Col. T. Asbert Mordaunt, 10th Regiment of Dragoons
 Lieut. Col. George Morgan, Coldstream Regiment of Foot Guards
 Lieut. Col. William Morrice, 10th Regiment of Dragoons
 Lieut. Col. William Morris, Half Pay †
 Major General George Morrison, of the Corps of Engineers, and Quarter Master General of his Majesty's Forces †
 Lieut. and Adjut. Edward Mortimer, Leicestershire Militia
 Honourable Lieut. General Murray, 13th Regiment of Foot, and Lieut. Governor of Minorca †
 Lieut. Charles Murray, Marines
 Lieut. John Murray, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot †

Duke

SUBSCRIBERS.

N.

- Duke of Newcastle, Lord Lieutenant and Custos Rotulorum of Nottingham, Auditor of the Exchequer, K. G. L. L. D. and F. R. S. &c. Two Books
- Duke of Northumberland, Lord Lieutenant and Custos Rotulorum of the Counties of Middlesex and Northumberland, Vice Admiral of all America, K. G. and F. R. S. Two Books †
- Honourable Lieut. Col. Francis Napier, Marines
- Lieut. Colebrook Nesbitt, 32d Regiment of Foot
- Capt. Stephen Nevison, Marines
- Lieut. Col. Michael Nickson, 2d (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot †
- Lieut. George Nugent, 7th, or Royal English Fusiliers
- Capt. Clement Newlam, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of Dragoons.

O.

- Right Honourable Lord Onflow, one of the Lords Commissioners of the Treasury, Three Books
- Lieut. General Sir J. Athol Oughton, K. B. 31st Regiment of Foot
- Col. George Ogilvy, 3d Regiment of Foot Guards †
- Capt. Thomas Osborne, late of the 58th Regiment of Foot †
- Count O'Rourke, Master General of Horse, Chamberlain to the late King of Poland, and Knight of the Order of St. Louis
- Capt. Humphry Owen, 7th, (or Royal Fusiliers) Regiment of Foot

P.

- Right Honourable Lieut. General Earl Pembroke, 1st (or Royal) Regiment of Dragoons, Lord Lieutenant and Custos Rotulorum of Wiltshire, and one of the Lords of the Bedchamber to his Majesty, Three Books †
- Right Honourable Lieut. General Earl Percy, 5th Regiment of Foot, and Western Battalion of Middlesex Militia, Two Books †
- Right Honourable Lord Algernoon Percy, Vice-President of the Middlesex Hospital, and M. P. Two Books
- Sir Richard Perrot, Bart.
- Capt. Peter Painter, Marines
- Capt. Edward Parker, 31st Regiment of Foot
- Mr. John Parker, Lyon's-inn
- Ensign George Parkhurst, 25th Regiment of Foot
- Ensign Hamps B. Palmer, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards
- Second Lieut. James Parsons, Marines
- Mr. Robert Parsons

Lieut.

S U B S C R I B E R S .

Lieut. Charles Peckover, London Militia
 Capt. Phillip Perry, Leicestershire Militia
 Lieut. John Perry, Marines
 Lieut. Joseph Partridge, Half Pay
 Lieut. Richard Phillips, Half Pay, late of the 2d (or Queen's
 Royal) Regiment of Foot †
 Lieut. Pingston, London Militia
 William Plumer, Esq; M. P. Three Books
 Capt. John Popple, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Lieut. Richard Pottenger, Berkshire Militia
 Capt. Penniston Powney, Berkshire Militia
 Messrs. Pugh and Duncan, Panton-street, Contractors for
 Army Necessaries, Four Books
 Capt. William Price, 7th (or Queen's) Regiment of Dra-
 goons †
 Capt. John Charles Price, Berkshire Militia
 Major George Preston, Marines
 Capt. Henry James Pye, Berkshire Militia
 Lieut. Walton Pye, ditto

R.

Right Honourable Earl Rochford, Vice-Admiral of the
 Coasts, and Lord Lieutenant and Custos Rotularum of
 Essex, &c.
 Col. Lord Robert Romney, Western Kentish Militia, L. L. D.
 and F. R. S. and President of the Society for Encouraging
 Arts and Manufactures, Three Books †
 Major General Charles Rainsford, Coldstream Regiment of
 Guards, Equerry to his Royal Highness the Duke of Glou-
 cester, and Governor of Chester, Two Books †
 Lieut. Col. Robert Raitt, Half Pay, late of the 2d, (or Queen's
 Royal) Regiment of Foot
 Cornet Edward Repington, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Mr. James Ryan, Gernyn-street
 Mr. George Riley, Bookfeller, &c. Curzon-street, Twelve
 Books
 Ensign and Adjut. Francis Richardson, 1st Regiment of
 Guards
 Cornet Joseph Richardson, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Cornet John Richardson, 3d (or King's own) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Lieut. George Poyntz Ricketts, South Hants Militia
 Lieut. Col. Alexander Rigby, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. John Roberts, London Militia
 Major John Robins, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 Lieut. General Robert Robinson, Governor of Pendennis
 Castle
 Ensign George Rodney, 3d Regiment of Guards
 Lieut. Henry Rooke, 3d (or King's own) Regiment of
 Dragoons

Col.

S U B S C R I B E R S .

Capt. Richard Rose, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Rose
 Capt. Andrew Rofs, 31st Regiment of Foot
 Capt. William Rotheram, Marines, Two Books
 Second Lieut. Rufford, Marines
 Second Lieut. Edward Ruhworth, South Hants Militia
 Capt. Rutt, Milkham, near Bath
 Cornet Rowley, 10th Regiment of Dragoons
 Col. William Røy, of the Corps of Engineers, and Deputy
 Quarter Master General of his Majesty's Forces †

S.

Right Honourable Lord George Sutton, Col. of the Notting-
 hamshire Militia, one of the Vice-Presidents of the Lock
 Hospital, and M. P. Two Books
 Col. Sir Simeon Stuart, Bart. South Hants Militia, one of
 the Chamberlains of the Tally Court in the Exchequer,
 and M. P. †
 Capt. Thomas Sadler, South Hants Militia
 Capt. Samuel Salter, Hertfordshire Militia
 Lieut. General Edward Sandford, 10th Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. George Sandford, 7th (or Queen's) Regiment of Dra-
 goons †
 Lieut. Col. Clement Saxton, Berkshire Militia
 Capt. Edmund Seimure, Berkshire Militia
 Ensign Peter Serle, South Hants Militia
 Lieut. Col. Henry Shawe, 11th Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. Bernard Shawe, 2d, (or Queen's Royal) Regiment of
 Foot †
 Col. Commandant Thomas Sheldon, Marines
 Capt. Lieut. Edward Shephard, Berkshire Militia
 Lieut. Thomas Shephard, South Hants Militia
 Honourable Lieut. General Philip Sherrard, 69th Regiment
 of Foot †
 Lieut. Charles Simes, late of the 10th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. and Quarter Master Thomas Sims, Marines †
 Lieut. Thomas Sims, Marines
 Surgeon Mr. Thomas Stear, 7th, or Royal English Fuzileers
 Lieut. and Adjut. Ambrose Simpson, 59th Regiment of Foot
 Major Joseph Sirr, Deputy Advocate General in Ireland †
 Lieut. Col. W. C. Farrell Sheffington, 1st Regiment of Foot
 Guards
 Major General Robert Skene, of 59th Regiment of Foot, and
 Adjut. General in North Britain
 Lieut. Col. Boughy Skey, late of the 40th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. William Sladden, Berkshire Militia
 Brigadier General Francis Smith, 10th Regiment of Foot,
 Aid de Camp to the King, Three Books
 Major General Henry Smith, Marines
 Capt. Charles Smith, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Smith, Marines

Lieut.

S U B S C R I B E R S .

Lieut. Walter Smith, Marines
 Mr. Felix Smith, Watford, Herts
 Capt. Edward Sparhawke, Hertfordshire Militia
 Lieut. Nathan Spencer, Leicestershire Militia
 Honourable Col. Henry St. John, 67th Regiment of Foot, Aid
 de Camp to his Majesty, one of the Grooms of his Majesty's
 Bedchamber, M. P. †
 Col. Anthony St. Leger, H. P. †
 Lieut. Col. Barry St. Leger, 34th Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. William Sowle, late of the 70th Regiment of Foot
 Capt. William St. Clair, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Honourable Col. Edward Stopford, 66th Regiment of Foot,
 M. P. †
 Lieut. J. Kennedy Strong, 64th Regiment of Foot
 Capt. Richard Symes, 52d Regiment of Foot
 Ensign Simeon Stuart, South Hants Militia
 Major General William Style, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards

T.

Right Honourable Lieut. General Lord Viscount Townsend,
 2d (or Queen's) Regiment of Dragoon Guards, and Master
 General of the Ordnance, Four Books
 Lieut. General William Taylor, 24th Regiment of Foot, Three
 Books †
 Mr. William Thompson, Islington
 Lieut. General John Thomas, Coldstream Regiment of
 Guards †
 Capt. and Adjut. Edward Thornley, 2d (or Queen's Royal)
 Regiment of Foot †
 Col. William Thornton, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards, Three
 Books †
 Capt. Thomas Timmins, Marines
 Capt. William Tomkins, Coldstream Regiment of Guards †
 Mr. Francis Tomkins, Army Hospital †
 Major General Cyrus Trapaud, 70th Regiment of Foot †
 Mr. Roger Tremels, Northumberland-street
 Major Alexander Trotter, Marines

V.

Lieut. Col. Charles Vallency, Engineer †
 Charles Vane, Esq;
 Col. Arthur Vansittart, Berkshire Militia
 Major John Vatafs, 10th Regiment of Foot †

W.

Right Honourable General Earl Waldegrave, Coldstream
 Regiment of Foot Guards, Master of the Horse to her
 Majesty, and Governor of Plymouth, Two Books †

Right

S U B S C R I B E R S.

Right Honourable Lord Viscount Weymouth, Secretary of
 State for the Southern Department, and High Steward of
 Tamworth
 Major Sir Richard Worsley, Bart. South Hants Militia,
 one of the Verdurers of the New Forest, and M. P.
 Francis Wadman, Esq; Gentleman Usher to the Princess of
 Amelia †
 Lieut. General Hunt Walsh, 56th Regiment of Foot †
 Major John Walter, Berkshire Militia
 John Wallace, Esq;
 Lieut. William Wardlaw, late of the 2d (or Queen's Royal)
 Regiment of Foot †
 John Waters, Esq; Bushey, Herts
 Capt. Thomas Warbuton, 11th Regiment of Dragoons
 Capt. Charles Watfon, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Alexander Watfon, Honourable East India Company
 Cornet Christopher Watton, 3d (or the King's own) Regiment
 of Dragoons
 John Wallis, N^o 33, Ludgate-street, Twenty-five Books
 Lieut. Col. Richmond Webb, late of the 2d (or Queen's Royal)
 Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. James Webber, 58th Regiment of Foot †
 Capt. John Webber, Marines
 John Wemys, Esq; Lieut. Governor of Edinburgh Castle †
 Capt. Maurice Wemys, Marines
 Ensign John Wemyss, 59th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Col. Richard White, 3d (or the King's own) Regiment
 of Dragoons, Two Books †
 Capt. William White, London Militia
 Ensign Charles Williamfon, 25th Regiment of Foot
 Lieut. Edward Winne, 6th (or Inniskilling) Regiment of
 Dragoons
 John Wood, Esq; Governor and Captain General of the Isle
 of Man †
 Lieut. Thomas Wood, Marines
 Lieut. Col. John Woodford, 1st Regiment of Foot Guards
 Capt. Thomas Wortley, South Hants Militia
 Capt. Hale Young Worthern, Hertfordshire Militia
 Capt. John Wright, Leicestershire Regiment of Militia
 Lieut. Col. Joseph Wrightson, Major of Chelsea College †
 Lieut. William Wynne, Militia
 Lieut. Col. Wadham Wyndham, Coldstream Regiment of
 Foot Guards

N. B. Those thus † marked were Subscribers to some of my
 former Military Publications.

ADDITIONAL SUBSCRIBERS.

A.

MR. Almon, Piccadilly, One Hundred Books

B.

Capt. James Brown, Marines, Half Pay
Capt. Buttle, Marines, 2d Subscription

C.

Right Honourable Earl Clanricarde, 2d Subscription, Two Books
Lieut. General Campbell, Two Books, 2d Subscription

D.

Col. Duke of Dorset, Western Kentish Militia, Vice-Admiral of the Coast of Middlesex, Lord Lieutenant and Custos Rotulorum of Kent and City of Canterbury, and High-Steward of Stratford-upon-Avon.
Lieut. Col. Dalrymple, 2d of Foot, 2d Subscription
Major Duval, Marines, 2d Subscription

F.

Mr. Fisk, Bookseller, Corner of Edward-street, Twenty Books
Honourable Lieut. General Fitzroy, 2d Subscription
Major Fletcher, Marines, 2d Subscription
Ensign Foster, 24th Regiment of Foot

G.

Major James Gordon, of the Royal Edinburgh Volunteers, Twenty-one Books

H.

Lieutenant John Harris, Half Pay
Mr. Harrop, Printer, Manchester, Twelve Books
Col. Stanhope Harvey, 2d Battalion of West Riding Yorkshire Militia, Two Books
Lieut. Charles Helyar, 17th, or Royal English Fusiliers
Lieut. Samuel Hill, Nottinghamshire Militia

K.

Capt. John Kirk, Nottinghamshire Militia

Mr.

ADDITIONAL SUBSCRIBERS:

L.

Mr. Lewis Loché, Military Academy, Chelsea, Twenty-five Books, 2d Subscription

M.

Capt. Malcher, 2d Subscription
Manchester Royal Volunteers, Six Books
Mr. Millan, Charing Cross, Twenty-five Books

N.

Sir James Norcliffe, Bart. Three Books

O.

Capt. Lieut. and Adjutant, Charles Oates, 2d Battalion of West Riding Yorkshire Militia

P.

Major James Perkins, Marines

R.

Lieut. Col. Raitt, 2d Subscription
Major Rotheram, Marines, 2d Subscription

S.

Lieut. Col. Commandant, Right Honourable Earl Seaford,
of a Highland Battalion, Twelve Books
Lieut. John Serymgeor, Bengal Establishment
Capt. Shawe, 2d Subscription

T.

Lieut. General Taylor, 2d Subscription
Mr. Thompson, Ilington, 2d Subscription
Lieut. Col. John Tupper, Marines

V.

Charles Van, Esq; M. P.

W.

Mr. Waddell, Buck-court, Temple
Lieut. Charles Wedderburn, Bengal Establishment
Major Maurice Wemys, 2d Subscription
Capt. William Williams, Marines, Six Books
John Wright, Esq; Quebec-street, Two Books

MILITARY COURSE,

FIRST PART,

Of the Choice of Arms, &c.

THE bore of the barrel is to receive a bullet at the rate of 29 to 2 pounds of lead, and should be very smooth of the inside: the stock sound, not too much bent in the butt; the lock strong with firm springs; the hammer well steeled and properly hardened (those that are not will often miss fire); the ram rod strait and free from flaw, to try which drop it out of your hand, at about four feet high, upon flat stones; if sound and good it will receive no damage, if otherwise it will either crack, break, or shew its defect; the pipes must be firm in the stock, that the rammer may be returned with safety and expedition; the spring below the tail pipe also, to prevent the weight of the ram rod from advancing forward when it comes to the present.

The bayonet (being a weapon esteemed preferable to fire by the much lamented General Wolfe) the blade should be made of the very best materials, and the point sharp; bad blades carry the appearance of small cracks or flaws;

A

therefore

2 A MILITARY COURSE.

therefore they should undergo the same trial as directed for the ram rod; the socket should most exactly be fitted to the muzzle, neither too tight or too easy; the scabbard should be of the best strong leather, not lined, the hooks and chapes well fixed.

Explanation of the names of the several parts of the firelock and bayonet.

Barrel,	Third Loop,	Touch-hole,
Stock,	Tail Pipe,	Cock,
Rammer,	Feather Spring,	Butt,
Sight,	Hammer,	Bayonet,
Fire Loop,	Trigger,	Shank,
Loop and Swivel,	Guard,	Socket:

Of the choice of Flints and the fixing of them.

THE flints best for service are those most clear, though the colour is immaterial, as there are good and bad of all kinds; neither too small or too thin are best, lest the first may not give good fire, or the latter break: they should be screwed in firm, between a thin piece of lead, it having then surer hold than leather, &c.

How to prove the goodness of Gun-powder by the Sight, the Touch, and by the Fire.

AS to the first: when you perceive your powder more black than usual, it is a certain sign that it is too moist, and if you put it upon some white paper, and find that it blackens it, you may assure yourself that there is too much charcoal amongst it: but if it be of a deep ash colour, inclining a little to the red, it is a sure sign that your powder is good.

A MILITARY COURSE.

To try Gun-powder by the Touch.

Bruise some grains or corns of it with the end of your finger, and if it readily disperses and yields easily to the pressure of your finger, you may conclude that there is too much charcoal in it. If upon squeezing or pressing it a little strong upon a marble or smooth wooden table, you feel particles that are harder than the rest, which prick you a little, and that cannot be crushed without some difficulty, you may infer that the sulphur is not well incorporated with the salt-petre, and that consequently the powder is not duly prepared.

In short you may determine with the utmost certainty concerning the goodness or badness of your gun-powder by means of fire as follows: lay little parcels or heaps of gun-powder upon a clean smooth table, at the distance of two or three inches from one another, and set fire to one of them; which if it blows up at once without catching hold of any other parcels and makes a little sort of an acute noise, or produces a white, clear smoke, rising with a sudden velocity, and appearing in the air like a little circle or diadem of smoke, you may depend upon its being perfectly well prepared. If after this powder is enkindled, there remains any black spots upon the table, it will be a sign that there is a great deal of charcoal in it which has not been sufficiently burnt: if the board is as it were greasy, you may be assured that the sulphur and salt-petre have not been sufficiently purified or purged of that noxious and vicious humour, which is natural to both the one and the other of them. If you find any small particles which are white or inclining to lemon colour, it will be a mark that your sulphur is not well clarified, and consequently that it still retains earthy particles, or common salt; and moreover, that the sulphur

4 A MILITARY COURSE.

is not compounded or ground enough, nor sufficiently incorporated with the two other ingredients of the composition:

To Restore damaged Gun-powder.

IF powder be long in a damp place, it will become damaged, and formed into hard lumps: when thus cemented, you will see, at the bottom of the barrel, some saltpetre, which, by being wet, will separate from the saltpetre and coal, and always fall to the bottom and settle there in the form of a white downy matter; to prevent this, move the barrels as often as convenient, and place them on their contrary sides or ends to which they stood before; though great care be taken of powder, and kept as dry as possible, yet length of time will greatly lessen its former strength.

When any of the above-mentioned accidents happen to your powder, you may recover it by applying to the directions here given, viz. if the powder has not received much damage proceed thus: spread it on canvass cloth, or dry boards, and expose it to the sun; then add to it an equal quantity of good powder, mix them well, and when quite dry, barrel it up. If gun-powder be very bad, the method to restore it is, first to know what it weighed when good; then, by weighing it again, you will find how much it has lost by the separation and evaporation of the saltpetre; then add to it as much refined saltpetre as it has lost in weight; but, as a large quantity would be difficult to mix, it will be necessary to add a proportion of nitre to every twenty pounds of powder; when done, put one of these proportions into your meal-table, and grind it therein, till you have brought it to an impalpable powder; then scarce it with a fine sieve; if any remain in the sieve that will not pass through, re-

turn it to the table, and grind it again, till you have made it all fine enough to go through the sieve: being well ground and sifted, it must be made into grains thus: first, you must have some copper wire sieves made according to what size you intend the grains to be; these are called corning sieves, or grainers; fill them with the powder composition, then shake them about, and the powder will pass through the sieve formed into grains. Having thus corned your powder, set it in the sun; and when quite dry, scarce it with a fine hair sieve, to separate the dust from the grains. This dust may be worked up again with another mixture; so that none of the powder will be wasted: sometimes it may happen, that the weight of the powder when good cannot be known; in which case, add to each pound an ounce or an ounce and an half of saltpetre, according as the powder is decayed; then grind, sift, and granulate it, as before directed.

N. B. If a large quantity of powder is quite spoiled, the only way is to extract the saltpetre from it, as powder thus circumstanced would be difficult to recover.

How to extract Saltpetre from damaged Gun-powder.

YOU must have filtering bags hung on a rack, with glazed earthen pans under them; then take any quantity of damaged powder, and put it into a copper, with as much clean water as will just cover it; and, when it begins to boil, take off the scum, and, after it has boiled a little, stir it up; take it out of the copper with a small hand kettle, and then put some in each bag, beginning at one end of the rack, so that by the time you have got to the last bag, the first will be ready for more: continue thus till all the bags are full; then take the liquor out of the pans, which boil and filter as before, two or three

6 A MILITARY COURSE.

times, till the water runs quite clear, which you must let stand in the pans for some time, and the saltpetre will appear at the top.

To get all the saltpetre entirely out of the powder, the water from the saltpetre already extracted, to which add some fresh water and the dregs of the powder that remain in the bags, and put them together in a vessel, to stand as long as you please; and when you want to extract to nitre, you must proceed with this mixture as with the powder at first, by which means you will extract all the saltpetre: but this process must be boiled longer than the first.

Of a Gunsmith for each Battalion.

A battalion may happen to be so circumstanced as not to be able to get their field pieces or arms repaired when broke or out of order; it therefore would be of infinite service to remedy this evil, by enlisting a gunsmith and a proper assistant, and providing a small portable forge and the necessary tools, to be drawn with one horse.

The proper regulations for labour, &c. should be fixed by the field officers and captains, and, if the smith should find himself a loser, such sums must be made good by them, as well as a gratuity for his trouble.

The king of Prussia has a camp smith to each battalion, and Vegetus had a smith and carpenter to each; but perhaps it will be said that the battalions of artillery have them; but that you will say is of no consequence, as they are not always quartered with a battalion; beside their own business will be sufficient to employ them.

of

*Of Military Burials, from the Field-Marshal's to a
common Soldier's.*

THE funeral of a Field-marshal shall be saluted with three rounds of fifteen pieces of cannon, attended by six battalions, and eight squadrons.

That of a General, with three rounds of eleven pieces of cannon, four battalions, and six squadrons.

That of a Lieutenant-general, with three rounds of nine pieces of cannon, three battalions, and four squadrons.

That of a Major-general, with three rounds of seven pieces of cannon, two battalions, and three squadrons.

That of a Brigadier-general, with three rounds of five pieces of cannon, one battalion, and two squadrons.

That of a Colonel, by his own battalion (or an equal number by detachment) with three rounds of small arms.

That of a Lieutenant-colonel, by three hundred men and officers, with three rounds of small arms.

That of a Major, by two hundred men and officers, with three rounds of small arms.

That of a Captain, by his own company, or seventy rank and file, with three rounds of small arms.

That of a Town or Fort-major, by one captain, two subalterns, three serjeants, three corporals, two drummers, two fifers, and seventy rank and file.

That of a Chaplain, the same as a town or fort-major.

That of a Lieutenant, by a lieutenant, one serjeant, one drummer, one fifer, and thirty-six rank and file, with three rounds of small arms.

That of an Ensign, Adjutant, Quarter-master having no other commission, by an ensign, one serjeant, one drummer, and twenty seven rank and file, with three rounds of small arms.

A MILITARY COURSE.

That of a Serjeant, by one serjeant, and nineteen rank and file, with three rounds of small arms.

That of a Corporal, Musician, Private man, Drummer, or Fifer, by one serjeant and thirteen rank and file, with three rounds of small arms.

All officers attending the funerals, of even their nearest relations, shall notwithstanding wear their regimentals, and only have a piece of black crape round their left arms.

The paul should be supported, by officers of the same rank with that of the deceased; if that number cannot be had, officers next in seniority are to supply their place.

A non-commissioned officer's corps should be attended to the grave by the non-commissioned officers of the regiment, and private men of the company to which he did belong.

Directions for a Funeral Party.

IF for that of a commissioned officer. The commissioned ones of the party and paul-bearers are to be dressed in full regimentals; black crapes round their left arms and hats, with black sword knots, drums, fifes, and halberds in mourning; the deceased's sword drawn and placed with the scabbard across on the top of the coffin.

The party (according to the rank of the deceased) appointed to escort the corpse to the grave is to draw up three deep, with open ranks, facing the house, or marquise, where it is lodged; and when the corpse is brought out of the house, or marquise, the officer commanding the party will order,

Rest your firelocks.

Reverse your firelocks.

Rear ranks close to the front.

March.

On which the ranks close.

A MILITARY COURSE,

To the right wheel by division.

March.

On which the ranks close.

They wheel into two or more divisions, according to their strength. The officer or officers will then reverse their esponsions or fuzees, and the eldest post himself in the rear, The Serjeants reverse their halberds or firelocks,

Halt,

The party stands fast, till all is ready; when the officer will order,

March.

The party then marches off, led by the youngest officer, and opens ranks; the corpse following the party; and the drums being muffled, beating the dead march, and fifers playing a solemn tune. When it comes to the burial-ground, the officer orders,

Halt,

And the party stands fast.

Ranks to the right and left, wheel backwards,

March,

Each rank being told off, wheels back; one half to the right, the other to the left, and form a lane,

Rest on your arms reversed.

They come to the funeral posture. The corpse, &c. then pass through the lane, and he orders,

Rest your firelocks,

Shoulder your firelocks;

To the right and left, wheel and form your ranks;

March,

They wheel up, and form as before.

Rear ranks close to the front,

March,

The rear ranks of each division close up.

Divisions to the right, or left, wheel,

March.

March.

They wheel.

Halt.

They stand fast.

March.

They march till they come to the grave.

Halt.

They stand fast.

Rear ranks, to your proper distance.

They go to the right about.

March.

They march five or ten paces.

Front.

They come to their front.

When the Adjutant gives the officer commanding the party a signal, he orders,

Make ready.

Present.

They present in the air.

Fire.

They fire a volley, which is to be repeated three times: after the third time, they stand recovered. He then orders,

Half cock.

Shoulder.

Shut your pans.

Rear ranks close to the front.

March.

They close.

To the right, wheel by division.

March.

They wheel again in two or more divisions.

Halt.

They stand fast.

March.

March.

The commanding officer leads the first division, the rest following in their usual posts: they open their ranks, the drums beat, and fifers play. When drawn up on the regimental parade, he orders,

Recover your arms.

To the right about.

March.

And the men go to their quarters or tents.

The party load before they march off their parade.

“ Effects of the Dead.

“ When any commissioned-officer shall happen to die, or be killed in our service, the Major of the regiment, or the officer doing the Major’s duty in his absence, shall immediately secure all his effects or equipage then in camp or quarters; and shall, before the next regimental court-martial make an inventory thereof, and forthwith transmit the same to the office of our secretary at war, to the end that his executors may, after payment of his debts in quarters and interment, receive the overplus, if any be, to his or their use.

“ When any Non-commissioned-officer or private soldier shall happen to die, or be killed in our service, the then commanding officer of the company shall, in the presence of two other commissioned-officers, take an account of whatever effects he dies possessed of, above his regimental cloathing, arms, and accoutrements, and transmit the same to the office of our secretary at war; which said effects are to be accounted for, and paid to, the representative of such non-commissioned-officer or soldier: and in case any of the officers so authorized to take care of the effects of dead officers and soldiers should, before they shall have accounted to their representatives for the same, have occasion to leave the regiment by preferment

preferment or otherwise, they shall, before they be permitted to leave the same, deposit in the hands of the commanding officer, or the agent of the regiment, all the effects of such deceased non-commissioned-officers and soldiers, in order that the same may be secured for and paid to their respective representatives."

Military Honours due to crowned Heads.

"ALL armies salute crowned heads with the utmost respect; drums beating a march, colours and standards dropping, and officers saluting: their guards pay no compliment, except to princes of the blood, and even that by courtesy, in the absence of the crowned head.

Due to the Captain-General of Great-Britain, Field-Marshal, General of the Empire, or of the Dutch.

"All those denominations, meaning almost the same, are treated in the army with equal ceremony: their guards give them all the honours due to the representatives of sovereigns; the army in which they command shew them, conjunctly and separately, the same respect, except when any of the royal family are present."

Regulations of Honours to be paid by his Majesty's Forces to the General Officers of the Army.

"GEORGE R.

"OUR will and pleasure is that the following rules be duly observed and put in execution.

"Generals of horse and foot, upon all occasions, to have the march beat to them, and saluted by all officers, the colours excepted: they are likewise entitled to a guard of a Captain, Lieutenant, Ensign, and fifty men, with colours

colours and standards. Lieutenant-generals of horse and foot upon all occasions to be saluted by all officers; they are to have three ruffles given them, and are entitled to a guard of a Lieutenant and thirty men. Major-generals are to have two ruffles; and not saluted by any officer, and are entitled to a guard of an Ensign and twenty men. Brigadiers one ruffle, and are entitled to a guard of a Serjeant and twelve men.

“ A Lieutenant-general, who is a commander in chief, by virtue of a commission from us, is to have the same respect paid him, on all occasions, as a General of horse and foot; a Major-general as a Lieutenant-general, and a Brigadier as a Major-general.

“ All Governors, that are no general-officers, shall, in all places where they are Governors, have one ruffle given them, with rested arms; but for those that have no commission as Governors, no drum shall beat.

“ A Lieutenant-governor, or the officer who commands in his absence, shall have the main-guard turned out to him with shouldered arms.

“ A Town or Fort-major, in a garrison, is to command according to the rank he now has, or has had, in the army; and if he never had any other but that of Town or Fort-major, he is to command as youngest Captain.

“ A General of horse or foot to be received with swords drawn, kettle-drums beating, trumpets sounding; and all the officers to salute, except the Cornet bearing the standard.

“ A Lieutenant-general to be received with swords drawn, trumpets sounding, and all the officers to salute, except the Cornet who bears the standard, and the kettle-drums not to beat.

“ A Major-general to be received with swords drawn, one trumpet of each squadron sounding; no officers to salute, nor kettle-drums to beat.

“ A

“ A Brigadier-general to be received with swords drawn; no trumpet to found, nor any officer to salute, nor kettle-drums to beat.

“ As to the dragoons, they are to pay the same respect, according to the nature of their service.

“ And our further will and pleasure is, that our several troops of horse and grenadier guards, and our several regiments of foot-guards, be exempted paying any honours to the Generals, unless when they shall be in line with other troops, or mixed with them in detachments, or when they shall be reviewed by any General, by our special orders.”

Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Horse and Grenadier Guards, when mixed with other Troops.

“ A General of horse or foot is to be received with swords drawn, trumpets founding; all the officers to salute, except the Cornet bearing the standard; the kettle-drum not to beat.

“ A Lieutenant-general to be received with swords drawn, one trumpet of each squadron founding; no officers to salute, nor kettle drum beat.

“ A Major-general to be received with swords drawn, no trumpets founding; no officer to salute, nor kettle-drum to beat.

“ *N. B.* The troops of horse-grenadier guards to beat a march to a General, but bayonets not to be fixed: three ruffles to a Lieutenant-general; two ruffles to a Major-general, &c.

Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Foot Guards.

“ A General of horse or foot to be saluted by all the officers, except the Ensigns with the colours: a march is to be beat to him as he passes, but bayonets not to be fixed.

“ A

“ A Lieutenant-general to have three ruffles, and to be saluted by all the officers, except the Ensigns with the colours.

“ A Major-general two ruffles, and not to be saluted by the officers.”

Regulations for the Duty of our Horse and Foot Guards, when joined with other of our Troops.

“ THAT our foot-guards are to give no guard to any general-officer, only to the General commanding in chief, supposing him to be of the degree of a General or Lieutenant-general; in which case they are to furnish, for a General's guard, a Lieutenant, Ensign, and fifty men: for a Lieutenant-general's guard, so commanding in chief, an Ensign and forty men.

“ That the quarter-guard be commanded by an Ensign, who is to do no honours, but to the commander in chief; but is to turn out his guard to all the Generals above the degree of a Major-general, and to stand at the head of his guard, with his esponton in his hand, and the guard shouldered; that the horse-guards are never to mount any General's guard.

“ That their standard-guard to turn out only to the General commanding in chief, supposing him to be of the rank of a General or Lieutenant-general.

“ That both horse and foot are to turn out at the head of their camp, when the General, commanding in chief, passes along the line.

“ That, in all cases, when they shall be detached in the manner above-mentioned, both officer and soldier, as well horse as foot, do equal duty, in proportion with other troops with whom they shall be joined.”

COLOURS.

C O L O U R S.

“The first standard, guidon, or colours of a regiment, is not to be carried on any guard but that of his Majesty, the Queen, Prince of Wales, or Captain-general, and, except in these cases, shall remain always with the regiment.”

Honours to the Master-General of Ordnance.

“The Master-general of the ordnance shall have the same respects from the troops with Generals of horse or foot; that is, upon all occasions, to have the march beat to him, and is to be saluted by all officers, the colours excepted.”

Compliment

Compliment due to General Officers, &c. in Garrison, Camp, or Quarters, with a detail of Officers and Men they are intitled to.

GUARDS.	Captains.	Lieutenants.	Ensigns.	Serjeants.	Corporals.	Drummers.	Private men.
The General in chief has —	1	1	1	2	2	2	50
General of horse and foot —	1	1	1	2	2	2	50
Lieutenant-general of horse and foot — — — — } —		1		1	1	1	30
Major-general of horse and foot — — — — } —			1	1	1	1	20
Brigadier — — — — —				1			12
Quarter-master General (as such only) — — — — } —				1			12
The Majors of brigade, incamped together — — — — } —				1			2
Judge advocate — — — — —				1			7
Provost-marshal *, as such, a Serjeant and eighteen men; but when he has prisoners, there is added a subaltern, serjeant, drummer, and thirty men. } —		1		2	2	1	48

The train of artillery, according to the number they shall require.

The guard which mounts on the General in chief, has always colours.

* Provost-marshal is an officer appointed to secure deserters, spies, and all other criminals; he goes round the army, garrison, and its environs: hinders the soldiers from pillaging, indicts offenders, executes the sentence pronounced, and regulates the markets, weights, and measures.

B

Of

Of the Public Beatings of the Drum in Garrison.

TO beat the General, is an order for the whole to make ready to march; the Assemblée, to repair to their colours; and the March commands them to move; the Reveille, at day-break, warns the soldiers to rise, and the centries to cease challenging; the Troop assembles them together, to call over the roll and inspect the men for duty; the Retreat is beat at sunset, for calling over the roll again to warn the men for duty, and read the orders of the day: the Taptoo beats at ten o'clock every night in summer, and at nine in winter; the soldiers must then repair to their quarters or barracks, when the non-commissioned officers of each squad call over their rolls, and every man must remain there till reveille beating next morning. A Beat to arms, is to advertize them to stand to their arms, or to repair to their alarm posts; and a Chamade, is to desire a conference with the enemy.

Method of going and receiving the Rounds in a Garrison.

WHEN the Town-major goes his rounds, he comes to the main-guard and demands a Serjeant and four men to escort him to the next guard; one of the men carrying a lanthorn. He may go to which gate he pleases first; but all the other rounds, except the Governor's or Commandant's, are to go according to the method prescribed them. As soon as the sentry at the guard-room door perceives the round coming, he should give notice to the guard, that they may be ready to turn out: when the round comes within twenty paces of the guard, he is to challenge; and when he is answered by the Serjeant who attends the Town-major's round, he is to say,

Stand

Stand round; after which he is to call out immediately, *Serjeant, turn out your guard*; *Town-major's round*: no round is to advance after the sentry has challenged and ordered them to stand. Upon the sentry's calling, the Serjeant is to turn out the guard immediately, with shouldered arms, and the officer is to post himself at the head of it; after this, he is to order the Serjeant, and four men, to advance towards the round and challenge: when the Serjeant of the guard comes within six paces of the Serjeant who escorted the round, he is to halt and challenge briskly; the Serjeant of the escort answering, *Town-major's round*; he replies, *Advance, Serjeant, with the parole*; and then orders his men to rest their firelocks: the Serjeant of the escort advancing alone, gives the Serjeant of the guard the parole in his ear; he then returns to his escort; and, leaving the men he brought with him to keep the round from advancing, goes to his officer, and gives him the parole he received from the Serjeant. The officer, finding the parole to be right, orders his Serjeant to return to his men, and says, *Advance, Town-major's round—rest your firelocks*; upon which the Serjeant of the guard orders his men to wheel back from the center and make a lane, through which the round is to pass: the escort remaining where they were, he goes up to the officer, and, laying his mouth to his ear, gives him the parole. The Town-major then examines if the gates are locked and well secured; whether they have taken possession of their night-posts, and placed the additional night-sentries; counts the men who are under arms, to see if they are all on guard; and, if any are missing, enquires into the reason of their absence: he may likewise examine the night-orders, as also all others relating to the guard, and rectify any mistakes. After these things are done, he should send back the Serjeant, and men who attended him, to the main-guard, and

take the same number from this guard to escort him to the next; and so from one to another, till he has finished his round.

As the Town-major's round is designed to see if the gates are locked, the night-posts fixed, and the orders delivered right, I presume he may go either along the ramparts or through the streets, from one guard to another, as he shall think proper; but all other rounds, except the Governor's, must go along the ramparts.

As soon as the round is gone, the officer is to order his men to lodge their arms.

The Town-major is at liberty to take what time he pleases for going his round, so that it is completed between the time of shutting the gates and twelve o'clock; but it would be as well if he went at uncertain hours, and changed his way of going, in order to keep the guards alert; however, he should always go the first round, to verify the night-orders.

The Town-major having finished his round, he is to wait on the Governor early next morning, and make him a report of the state of all the posts, and the condition he found them in.

All other rounds must be received in the same manner as is directed for the Town-major's, only with this difference, that the officers on guard are to give the parole to the grand round; but all other rounds are to give it to them; and though the Governor shall go his round, after the grand round is made by the Captain of the main guard, he is to give the parole to the officers on guard; but, in this case, the Governor may carry an officer to give the parole for him.

The Captain of the main-guard is to go the grand round; the Lieutenant, the visiting.

When the Governor, or field-officer of the day, intends to go the grand round, notice of it must be sent
to

to the Captain of the main guard, to prevent his going, that he may be prepared to receive him; it being usual for the Governor, or field-officer, to come to the main-guard first, and take an escort along with him from thence to the next guard, or to conduct him quite round, if he thinks proper. The Governor may order what number of men for his escort he pleases.

When the Governor, or field-officer of the day, goes the grand, the Captain of the main-guard is to go the visiting round.

The grand round, or any round which the Governor, or field-officer of the day, shall make, may begin where he pleases; because, whatever round he meets, is to give him the parole; whereas, when two other rounds meet, that which challenges first has a right to demand the parole of the other; but as this might occasion disputes in giving the parole, should both challenge together, or imagine they did, the place where they are to begin, and the hour which each round is to go at, must be particularly mentioned; by which method they cannot possibly meet, but will follow one another in a regular manner, provided they are punctual to their orders.

N. B. All rounds should be reported by the several guards, the officers names, at what hours they went, and every thing that happened extraordinary on them; such as officers being absent from their guards, or negligent in their duty; sentries drunk, asleep, not alert, or off their posts; if they discovered any thing of consequence, heard any noise in the country, saw any number of people assembled together, or met with any disturbance.

The ordinary rounds are three; the Town-major's round, the grand round, and visiting round: the extraordinary rounds are appointed to go every night, or

every two hours, as the Governor shall think proper; which rounds are performed by the officers who dismount the guard that morning, and are called visiting rounds.

As soon as the gates are shut, and the night orders delivered to the garrison, the Town-major may begin his round; the design of which is, that he may see whether the gates are shut, the additional night-posts and sentries posted, and the officers and soldiers on guard and regular in their duty.

FORM

FORM of a ROSTER for detaching BATTALIONS.

NATIONS.	No. of Battalion.	HEADS OF EACH COLUMN.																															
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
English.	32	1	6	8	11	12	16	18	21	22	27	29	32	33	37	39	42	43	44	50	53	54	58	60	63	64	69	71	74	75	79	81	84
Hanoverians.	24	2	7	9	13	17	19	23	28	30	34	38	40	44	45	51	55	59	61	65	70	72	76	80	82								
Prussians.	16	3	10	14	20	24	31	35	41	45	52	56	62	66	73	77	83																
Portuguese.	8	4			15				25			36			46						57					67							
Russians.	4	5							26						47																		
Total.	84																																

E X P L A N A T I O N.

IN the first column are the names of nations; in the second the number of battalions each had; and, the highest number being thirty-two, there are thirty-two squares opposite to each nation; but as the Russians have but four battalions, and only give in proportion to that number, all the squares except four are blanks; the same is observed in proportion to the Hanoverians, Prussians, and Portuguese. The reason for dividing them will appear very plain; as four to thirty-two, so is one to eight: the dividing of the blank squares opposite to the Russians will appear very regular and easy; as eight to thirty-two, so is one to four; which is the Portuguese: the Prussians and Hanoverians are proportioned in the same manner.

All the columns are numbered on the top, from one to thirty-two; and as the columns, with the figures in them, are supposed to be battalions, I have numbered them from one to eighty-four, that being the whole number of battalions; ten of which I shall suppose ordered upon duty; in this case you begin column one, number one, and carry it on to the Prussians in column three, number ten, that being the endings of such order. If two battalions more are ordered after, the endings will be with the English in column five, number twelve; and so on according to the demand of future orders.

The

The Nature of a Table for Overflights.*

Regiments.	N° of Captains.	Heads of each Column.							
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
The Royal.	8	1	5	8	12	15	19	23	26
Queen's Royal.	8	2	6	9	13	16	20	24	27
Old Buffs.	8	3		10	14	17	21	25	28
King's own.	8	4	7	11		18	22		29
Total	32								

Of the Firings made use of against an Enemy in Garrison.

To fire the Street Firing:

THIS firing is only used when troops are under the necessity of engaging in a street, defile, or highway, where many men cannot march in front: in whatever

* Overfligh, originally derived from the Dutch language, signifies to skip over. For instance, suppose four battalions, each consisting of eight Captains, are doing duty together, and that a Captain's guard is daily mounted; if in the Buffs, the second Captain is doing duty of Deputy-adjutant-general; and the fourth and seventh Captain in the King's are acting, one as Aid-de-camp, the other as Brigade-major, the common duty of these three Captains must be overflighed; that is, equally divided among the other Captains.

N. B. The three blank columns shew where the overflights take effect.

manner

manner you fire in front, it must not be equal to the breadth of the place; an interval must be left on each flank; down which those who have fired, may have room to march by files to form in the rear.

Take care to perform the Street Firing.

March.

The fifers and drummers play and beat a march: the whole step off with their left feet; and upon the preparative, the first company gets the word from their own officer,

Halt.

Make ready.

Present.

Fire.

After which the men recover their arms, and face outwards from their center.

March.

They go down the flanks by files, form in the rear; load, shoulder, and keep marching to the front, till they are ordered to fire again.

When one company has fired, the next takes up its ground, fires, and files off in the same manner: when the General beats the firing ceases.

N. B. This firing is to be performed retreating, by each company firing without advancing to the ground of the one that fires before. The usual notice for this fire is a preparative, and the retreat beating immediately after.

Parapet Firing.

When a breast-work or parapet is to be defended, I would draw up my men two deep; not only to extend my front, but to prevent disorder in going through the intervals.

Upon

Upon the preparative.

The front rank, with the officers, march up to the breast-work, or parapet; the men with recovered arms, and the officers with theirs advanced, who then give the word of command,

Present.

Fire.

After which they recover their arms, go to the right about; and, upon the word,

March,

they go to the rear; the other rank marching up with intervals open for them to pass through.

Execution Parties.

THE soldiers pitched upon for this most disagreeable duty, should be composed of such men, who have deserted or been punished by the sentence of a court-martial: they are to be formed into a small party, and commanded by a good Serjeant, who is carefully to examine their firelocks, and see they are well loaded, and have good flints in them; he is to give the men a clear idea of what they are to perform before-hand, that no mistakes may be committed.

The party being ordered to attend, stands shouldered, till the prisoner has finished his devotions, upon which the Serjeant moves his hand, and the party makes ready without the least noise; when the prisoner makes a signal, which is always done, the party immediately present, silently, without making the least noise with their feet, levelling directly at his breast; the moment they have presented, the Serjeant moves his hand again, upon which the men instantly fire.

There

There is also a reserve in the rear, ready to fire, if the first should not take the proper effect, and the Provost with a case of loaded pistols.

Standing Orders for a Guard who mount over Prisoners of War, or otherwise.

NO officer must leave his guard during the time he is on duty.

He must not suffer above two men at a time to leave the guard, and then only for their victuals and drink; when they return, he may allow two more to go off on the same account; but he should allow them no farther time than what is absolutely necessary, that each may have his turn; which if they transgress, they should be confined for. But lest some of the men should ask leave just before it is their turn to stand sentry, the officer of the guard should always send for the Corporal before he gives a man leave, that he may inform him when the man will be wanted; as also to order the Corporal to set down his name, with the hour he went, and the time allowed him: when he returns, he is to acquaint his officer with it, that he may know whether he is punctual or not.

The officers of the port-guards are to examine all strangers who come into the garrison, take their names in writing, with the place where they are to lodge, and the time they intend to stay; which they are to mention in the next report they send to the Captain of the main-guard; but when a person of distinction comes into the town, the officer of the port-guard is to send an account of it in writing immediately to the Captain of the main-guard, who is to acquaint the Governor or Commandant with it as soon as he can. When any suspected person, from his not being able to give a good account of himself,
comes

comes into the town, the officer is to send him to the Captain of the main-guard, who is to secure him till he can acquaint the Governor with it, in order to his being further examined.

The officer of the port-guard is to keep the barriers shut, and the draw-bridges up, on Sundays and holidays, during the time of divine service, and to have their men under arms at the opening and shutting the ports: they are to send a Serjeant or Corporal to the main-guard for the word, a little before night-fall, who is to carry their report in writing, signed, of what has happened on their guards.

They are likewise to shut the barriers, and draw up the draw-bridges, at the approach of any party of armed men, though it should be detachments of their own garrison, and acquaint the Town-major or Adjutant with it immediately, that he may wait on the Governor or Commandant to receive his orders for their admittance, without which they must not be permitted to come into the town.

When any number of men are permitted to enter the town, the officer of the port-guard is to have his men under arms; and if it is a detachment commanded by an officer, the men of the port-guard are to rest their arms, the drummer beat, and the fifer play a march, provided the party which enters beats a march: but if it is only a Serjeant's party, the guard is to remain shouldered, and the officer, at the head of it without his espartoon or fusée in his hand.

When a fire breaks out in the garrison, the officer of the port-guard is to put his men immediately under arms, order the barriers to be shut, the draw-bridges drawn up, and keep them so till the fire is extinguished; also when a riot happens, or a tumultuous assembly also near the port, the officer of the guard is to use the same precautions,

cautions, and keep his men under arms till it is over: tho' if it happens near his guard, he should send a party to disperse them and seize the offender.

The officer of the guard shall have a counter-part of the muster-roll of the prisoners of war, and the said roll must be called over at the setting of the watch, or relief of the guard, or both, as the officer of the guard shall direct: no prisoner is to be received, or admitted to liberty on parole, without previously acquainting the Commanding officer: no person shall enter into the prison, or converse with the prisoners, without permission of the officer of the guard, who, on such occasions, is to direct the necessary attendance: sentries posted within-side of the prison are to be relieved every hour during the day-time, and every half-hour after dark; those without as customary, and not obey any orders but those of the officer of the guard, Field-officer of the day, and officer commanding: patrols are alternately to go by a Serjeant or Corporal of the guard during the night; to keep the sentries alert. The guard is to be mustered often, and the name of every absentee returned to the commanding-officer: it is to be expected that the Commissary's economy of the prisoners of war, regarding victuals and place of confinement, should be such as humanity, security, and the credit of government require.

The sentry who misbehaves on his post should be severely punished; he is neither to quit it or his arms on any pretence whatever; he must not sit down, whistle, sing, or smoke tobacco; nor suffer any body to come into his sentry-box, except the officer and non-commissioned officers of the guard: he must be very vigilant on his duty, and exact in passing the word, *all's well*; suffer no people to assemble on his post, nor hold the least conversation with any one; but to be perfectly attentive to what he is planted for; which the Corporal at posting is fully

to

to instruct him in. During the time the retreat is beating, the guard must be under arms: when the officer is to examine the mens arms and ammunition, and see that the number of prisoners committed to his charge are properly secured; for the escape of a prisoner implies a remissness of duty: after tat-too beating, patrols must frequently be sent to make prisoners such soldiers as they find out of their barracks or quarters.

No officer must quit his post during the time the guards are relieving, to walk or talk with one another, except at the time the officer of the old guard is giving up his charge to the new one: the men must stand steady and silent, while the guards are relieving.

If any person comes near, who is intitled to a compliment, the eldest officer of both guards is to give the words of command.

The officers who are relieved from the guards are to troop them to the general parade; draw them up, and then dismiss them: then the dismounting officer is to make a report to the Governor or Commandant, and at the same time whisper the parole in his ear.

Of the Town-major and Town-adjutant.*

The Town-major, or, in his absence, the Town-adjutant, must take a Serjeant and twelve men from the main-guard, and go to the Governor or Commandant for

* Town or Fort major of a garrison is an officer constantly employed about the Governor or officer commanding, issues their orders to the troops in garrison, and reads its common orders to fresh troops when they arrive: he commands according to the rank he had in the army; if he never had any other commission than that of Town or Fort-major, he is to command as youngest Captain.

Town or Fort-adjutant is an assistant to the Fort or Town-major.

the

the keys of the town, bring them from thence to the main-guard, and deliver them to the Serjeants of the several ports, who are to carry them to their guards, escorted by the men they brought with them. As soon as the sentries at the ports perceive the Serjeants coming with the keys, they are to give notice of it; on which the officers are to turn out their guards, ranging the men under the vault or arch of the port, in two ranks facing one another, that the keys may pass between them: he must order a Corporal and four men more with arms to escort the keys to the outermost barrier, and to place two men with rested arms on every draw-bridge, till they return from locking the barriers. He must send likewise a sufficient number of men without arms to assist in the locking of the gates and drawing up the bridges.

They are also to visit all the guard-rooms, caserns, and barracks pretty often, to see that they are kept in good order, and that the furniture and utensils belonging to them are neither lost or more damaged than what may be reasonably expected: they are likewise to view all the parts of the fortifications, the sentry-boxes, platforms, batteries of cannon, spare carriages, &c. see that the palisades are not stolen or decayed, and make a report of the same to the Governor, that those things which are out of order may be repaired in due time.

In frontier garrisons, those who keep public houses must send an account in writing every night of all their lodgers to the Town-major, specifying their names, quality, and country, when they came into the town, and from whence, that he may shew it to the Governor or Commanding-officer, in order to compare it with the night-report from the Captain of the main-guard, by which he will know whether the officers on the port-guards do their duty in examining all strangers who

come into town, or the inn-keepers conceal any of their lodgers; whether those who came in gave a wrong account of the place they would lodge at, to conceal some evil design they had to manage; from which he will be able to take proper measures for finding them out, and punishing them accordingly. In time of war, all private houses are obliged to give an account to the Town-major of such strangers as lodge with them.

When the Town-major or Town-adjutant are ordered to put an officer under an arrest for high-treason, besides the usual sentries posted at the doors and windows, a Sergeant should always be kept in the same room, and relieved every six hours.

If any officer is put under an arrest for a small crime, it is not necessary to post any sentries; as by the articles of war, If any officer under an arrest should leave his confinement before he is set at liberty by the officer who confined him, or proper authority, he shall be cashiered for it."

C

A TABLE

Of the Command of a Town or Garrison.

WHOEVER is Governor or Commandant has the intire command of the troops which compose the garrison, though officers of a superior rank to him in the army should be ordered in with them; for the town being committed to his charge, he is answerable to his King for it, and consequently, cannot give up the command without exprefs orders in due form, from authority.

In the absence of the Governor, the command devolves upon the Lieutenant-governor, and in the absence of both, it goes to the eldest officer in the garrison, who is called during the time Commandant of the garrison.

Precautions a Governor or Commandant of a Garrison should take in Time of War.

A Governor or Commandant, the moment he takes the command of the garrison, is carefully to examine the works, palifade * the cover'd-way, and repair those that want it; likewise lay some horizontally on the middle of the parapets †, which have no revetement ‡, clear the

C 2

ditches

* Palifades are a kind of stakes made of strong split wood, of about nine feet long, three feet deep in the ground, in rows about six inches asunder. They are placed in the covert-way, at three feet from and parallel to the parapet or side of the glacis, to secure it from being surprized.

† Parapet is an elevation of earth, designed for covering the soldiers from the enemy's cannon, or small shot; wherefore, its thickness is from eighteen to twenty feet, its height is six on the inside, and four or five on the side next the country. It is raised on the rampart, and has a slope, called the superior talas, or glacis,
of

ditches from the earth, &c. see that the gates, sally-ports, or entrances are secure and well defended from being broken up; watch narrowly that no person holds a correspondence with the enemy to betray the garrison; for which purpose employ some people you can trust, to get into companies unsuspected, hear their discourse, and give notice of what they say.

If there are any old aqueducts, or under-ground passages, they should be stopped up, and sentries placed at their entrances. If there is any river passing through or near the town, parties must be put into boats in the night-time, both above and below the place, to watch that the enemy doth not come that way. In frosty weather, the ice in the ditches should be broke every day, and the shoals laid at top of one another towards the place, which will maké, in time, a kind of a wall so slippery as not to be passed over.

The Governor or Commandant should send parties every day, to range about the country, and in all the principal avenues, for two or three miles distance from the place, to see whether any ényemy approaches, or lies concealed thereabouts; and in the night, he should take care that the several guards keep strict to their duty, and watch carefully at their several posts, not letting any body approach the walls, not even the sentries, without the forms usual in such cases. The patrolle should walk all night about the several posts, to see that the sentries do not fall asleep, and that they do continually listen whether they hear any enemy approach; and, on the least

of the parapet, on which the soldiers lay their musquets to fire over.

§ Revetement is a strong wall, built on the outside of the rampart and parapet, to support the earth, and prevent its rolling into the ditch.

noise

noise or suspicion, give notice thereof to the guards, and they to the Governor.

It is particularly needful, on fair or market days, that the gates should be strictly guarded; the horse and foot should be ready to assemble and march upon the first notice given them; no people should be suffered to pass through the gates, but such as have some visible business in the town, or can give a good account of themselves. The sentries should not let any coaches, waggons, carts, &c. enter too close behind one another; and when they are loaded with hay, straw, or with any other thing wherein people may be concealed, they should be well examined before they are permitted to pass; and never let any carriage stop upon a draw-bridge on any pretence whatsoever, to prevent their being drawn up if occasion require.

On holidays, festivals, or rejoicing days, the Governor or Commandant should also take more than ordinary care in seeing the guards kept in the strictest manner; and the military discipline should, at all times, be kept with the utmost rigour: no great assemblies should be suffered after it is dark, "or during a fog." As the clergy are apt to betray a place, and often more than any other set of people, as experience has shewn, the Governor or Commandant would do well to examine now and then the churches and religious houses in the night, to see whether they have any under-ground passages leading out of town, as there sometimes are. Had the Governor of Cremona taken this precaution, he would not have been surprized as he was by Prince EUGENE, who held private correspondence with a priest, who concealed a strong body of men in a chapel; which, together with others that were let in by treachery, surprized the Governor in his bed.

Of STORES.

THE quantity of each kind of stores required for a siege cannot be precisely determined, on account of the various considerations on which it depends; as on the strength of the place and garrison, the capacity of the Governor or Commandant and Engineers, the quantity of artillery, ammunition, stores, and provision; and lastly, on the time, place, situation, &c. But as it is necessary to give some idea to the unexperienced officer, I shall here set down the quantity of each kind for a month's siege.

Stores required for a month's Siege.

Powder, according as the garrison	}	8 or 900,000 lb	
is more or less strong, —			
Shot for battering pieces	—	6000 lb	
Shot of a lesser fort	—	20,000 lb	
Battering cannons,	—	80	
Cannons of a lesser fort,	—	40	
Small field-pieces for defending	}	12	
the lines, —			
Mortars for throwing	{	24	
Shells,			
	{	24	
Stones,			
Shells for mortars,	—	15 or 16,000	
Hand-granades,	—	40,000	
Leaden Bullets,	—	180,000 lb	
Matches,	—	10,000 <i>Braces</i>	
Flints for muskets, of the best sort,	—	10,000	
Platforms complete for guns,	—	100	
Platforms for mortars,	—	60	
Spare	{	60	
			Carriages for guns,
			Mortar beds,
		20 <i>Sets</i>	
Spunges, rammers, and ladles,	—		
Tools for working in the trenches,	—	40,000	
		Several	

Several hand-jacks, gins, sling-carts, travelling-forges, and other engines proper to raise and carry heavy burdens, as likewise some to carry water to extinguish fire.

Several parcels of spare timber for bridges, wheelwrights, carpenters, &c.

There are, besides, several other things necessary; as miners tools, mantlets, stuffed gabions, fascines, pickets, and gabions in great quantities; tools for smiths, carpenters, and wheelwrights; a number of horses for the artillery, carts, and waggons: such as can be procured in the country are also used upon occasion.

Of Provisions for a Garrison, &c.

CARE must be taken that the soldiers never want their full allowance of bread; for the rest they can shift: let the bread be delivered to them as regularly as possible, and according to an effective list of those intitled to it, signed by the Governor or Commandant of the garrison.

P R O V I S I O N.

Rice, barley, wheat, oats, beans, pease, rye, hay, straw, garden stuff, wine, brandy, beer, vinegar, oil, salt, spice, tallow, bears and hogs alive and salted, sheep, poultry, dried fish, salt butter, cheese, biscuit, good spring, pump, or cistern water, and plenty of firing.

During a Siege,

WHEN you are certain the enemy will besiege you, stop up the avenues leading to the place with bodies of large trees, &c. burn mills, cut your dikes, and drown

the country if you can; drive in cattle, and bring in forage, &c. of all kinds; and lastly, set fire to every house and place round about the garrison.

Make the inhabitants and soldiers believe that succours are coming to your relief, and for which purpose produce sham letters and messengers.

Have in the enemy's camp some faithful spies, who may give you secret intelligence of all their movements, by throwing into your works or other places appointed, letters tied to lead or stones, and when you find them true and exact, reward them generously. They are cheap at any price.

If the enemy have made breaches, hinder them from reconnoitring; repair them immediately with earth, fascines, planks, trees, pieces of timber, barrels, dung, palisades, &c. and make the ascent as steep as possible, and as slippery; and if time will permit undermine it.

Breaches should be defended by men of tried courage, and be acquainted, that such who distinguish themselves upon this occasion shall be amply rewarded.

Of Sallies, &c.

WHEN a town or garrison is weak, sallies should be but seldom made; and prudence must direct them when they are necessary, though they give an opportunity for your spies to go out and to introduce succours.

Sallies must be bold, secret, and at different times and places; as likewise well planned, not only for the attack, but for the securing of a retreat.

A signal is agreed upon with the troops which sally, without which they would not be received in the town again, and then you must examine them well before they can be admitted; and if it be dark, they should have

A MILITARY COURSE.

have a *word*; and guard against spies sliding in with them.

You line your works with infantry, and point your guns from the places to which they are to retreat: however you must not neglect the other parts of the garrison; for it may happen that the enemy, being informed by their spies, or your deserters, &c. of your intended sally, may attack you at one place, whilst you make it at another.

Your sally must be made of the choicest troops, who are to sustain one another; and are to carry such tools as are necessary for their intended work.

If you have cavalry, and the situation permits, they may attack their guards in the rear, whilst your foot charge them in front and flank.

Remarks upon Sallies.

LEST those who sally may exceed their distance, I shall beg leave to observe, that a gun when pointed to hit the mark, will carry the ball about seven hundred yards; the culverin about the same distance; but the bastard less: the ordinary force of a gun, fired at two hundred yards from the mark, drives the ball into the earth about eleven or twelve feet, and into sand or loose earth, from twenty to twenty-four feet: and to point your piece right, it is necessary to be informed, that if a cannon be fired horizontally, on a horizontal plain, one half of the range of its ball describes a right line, the other a curve or parabola; you therefore should have crooked compasses to measure the calibre of the cannon and ball.

Siege

Siege raised.

IF the besiegers are under the necessity of raising the siege, because you have received succours, ammunition, or provisions, or from an obstinate defence, you may then make a sally on their rear, and immediately fill up their intrenchments and destroy their fascines, &c. and furnish every article necessary for another attack.

If you pursue the enemy, reconnoitre well the ground, woods, enclosures, and cross roads, and never pass through them without carefully examining them; and should always have faithful scouts advanced first, to prevent the danger of falling into an ambuscade.

If they leave provision behind, try them and rivulets of water, lest they should be poisoned.

Instructions, Cautions, and Observations, &c.

A SIEGE is a business of schemes and projects; and there are numberless precautions which escape the foresight of many employed upon that occasion, though a skilful and experienced enemy may soon, perhaps, observe them and artfully take occasions for making some fine strokes: history contains such examples, which are only rare now a-days, because we do not study them sufficiently; but an elevated genius, from a combination of ideas, depending on a thorough knowledge of the enemy's situation, will soon find his advantage in perfectly understanding them.

A place is surprized by drains, case-mates, or the issues of rivers or canals; by encumbering the bridges or gates by waggons meeting and stopping each other; sending soldiers into the place under pretence of deserters,

who on entering surprize the guard, being sustained by troops at ambush near at hand, to whom they give admittance; soldiers sometimes dressed like peasants, merchants, Jews, priests, workmen, or women, and as such presenting themselves at your gate are immediately admitted.

Henry the Fourth of France lost Amiens, in Picardy, by a waggoner letting fall a sack of nuts, as if by accident; for while the soldiers of the guard were picking them up, the Spaniards, who had disguised themselves like peasants on purpose, rushed out of a house near the gate, where they had laid in ambush, put them to the sword, and carried the town.

The blockade of Sardis by Antiochus the Great, says he, had lasted two years, when Lagoras of Crete, a man of extensive knowledge, put an end to it in the following manner: he considered that the strongest fortifications are often taken with the greatest ease; for the besieged in such places are generally negligent; and, trusting to the natural or artificial defences of their town, are at no pains to guard it: he knew likewise that they are often taken at the strongest places, from the besieged being persuaded that their enemy will not attempt to attack them where they think themselves impregnable. Upon these considerations, though he knew it universally believed that Sardis could not be taken by assault, and that hunger could induce its defenders to open the gates, yet he hoped to succeed; for the knowledge of his difficulties but increased his zeal.

Having perceived that a part of the wall which joined the citadel to the town, was built upon a rock extremely high and steep; and that from thence, as into an abyss, the people of the town threw down the carcases of dead horses, on which great numbers of carnivorous birds assembled daily to feed, and after having filled themselves,

themselves, never failed to rest upon the top of the rock or wall, our Cretan concluded that no guard could be near it.

He went to this place, examined carefully its approach, and where to fix his ladders; having found a proper spot for his purpose, he informed the king of his discovery, and acquainted him with his design. Antiochus, delighted with the project, advised Lagoras to pursue it, and granted him two officers whom he asked for, as people possessed of qualities necessary for assisting him.

These three, on consultation, resolved to execute their project the next night, at the end of which there was no moon; that being come, they chose fifteen of their stoutest and bravest men to carry ladders, scale the walls, and run the same risk that they did: they likewise took thirty others, and placed them in ambush in the ditch, to assist those who scaled the wall in breaking down a gate; at which two thousand more from the king were to enter: Antiochus favoured their enterprize by marching the rest of his army to the opposite side: Lagoras and his people approached softly with their ladders, and having scaled the rock, they broke open the gate, let in the two thousand, cut the throats of all they met, and set fire to the houses; so that the town was pillaged and ruined in an instant.

Young officers who read this account, ought to reflect on this attack: the penetration of Lagoras, in making his discovery; his attention in going himself to examine the proper places for fixing his ladders; his discernment in the choice of officers and soldiers to support him; and the harmony of the whole means which were employed on that occasion, afford very excellent lessons for any officers who may attempt such attacks.

Though

Though stupendous rocks may be thought inaccessible by the besieged, yet this is a proof that none are insurmountable to such penetrating geniuses as Antiochus's engineer.

Captain Vedel was once detached to a village where the curate of the parish had obtained leave from the Commanding-officer to make a procession of the penitents of a neighbouring convent to a chapel in the village which he named; alledging that it was an annual custom; but the Captain being astonished to see that such a numerous procession could be composed of devotees, beat to arms, and having drawn up his party of fifty men, disconcerted their scheme; for many in the procession, which he stopped, were found, to be peasants, armed with pistols and swords, whom the Commanding-officer, upon being informed of his discovery, caused immediately to be hanged with the curate and several of the penitents.

In 1708, M. de Schower surprized Benevarvi in Spain, by the Spaniards neglecting the guard of an old castle at the entrance of the place, which he seized by a forced march in the night, and then detached several parties to attack the town: the garrison confused by such a visit, fought for safety in flight, and ran to take shelter in the citadel; but were scarcely entered before they were made prisoners: the enemy succeeded by the garrison's suspecting no danger.

Counterfeiting a route from their Prince or General for the marching in of troops, under pretence of reinforcing the garrison, and to prevent a discovery, they put in practice the following stratagem:

They fix upon a person of the same country as of those who compose the garrison, dressed in an officer's uniform of the same pattern as those of their own troops; who rides up to the barrier, asks for the officer
of

of the guard, and having shewn him the route, desires as a favour, his permission for the men to march in directly, as they are very much fatigued, and that they will remain about the guard-room door till he has received the Governor or Commandant's orders concerning them.

The officer not suspecting but they were friends, complied with the request; upon which they marched in, seized the guard, and immediately sent detachments to take possession of the other gates; while the main body marched in at the same time, surprized the troops in barracks and quarters, made the Governor or Commandant prisoner, and put all to the sword who made the least resistance, or fired out of windows, &c.

Officers commanding guards at the principal ports or gates are lured out under various pretences; so contrived as to seize the gate in going in with them; sometimes houses, &c. are set on fire on the outside, and while the garrison comes out to assist and extinguish it, troops who lay concealed, march in and surprize the place; sometimes an alarm is given out at one side of the garrison, whilst you enter secretly at the other, which at that time is too often neglected.

In order to guard against surprizes or stratagems, I shall insert a CEREMONY AT THE BARRIER*, which I would have young officers and sentries strictly attend to.

When a sentry sees or hears a regiment or body of men approaching, he is to discharge his piece in the

* Barrier, a gate made of wooden bars about five feet long, perpendicular to the horizon, which is kept together by two long bars going across, and another crossing diagonally; they are used to stop the cut that is made through the esplanade before the gate of a town.

ais,

air, and call to the next post to pass the word to the guard, who immediately are to get under arms, draw up the bridges; first having sent a report to the Town-major or Adjutant for his attendance.

When he arrives, the bridges are let down for him and the escort to pass over, and they advance to the outward barrier, and examine the march, route, orders, &c. lest an enemy should under that pretence endeavour to get in and surprize the place: the Town-major or Town-adjutant and the escort are to remain within the barrier.

When the troops advance near it, he is to send his escort to order the troops to halt, and the commanding-officer to bring the route or order for his marching to that garrison, which is to be received over the barrier; and when he has reason to believe it authentic, and that they are friends, the barrier is to be opened, and the commanding-officer is then conducted by the Town-major or Adjutant to the Governor or Commandant (the escort to remain till their return, and not to suffer them to advance any nearer the garrison) who finding the route or order true, and having asked such other questions concerning them as may be necessary, directs the Town-major or Adjutant to attend him back to his troops, and then conducts them to their alarm post: when the garrison orders are read to them, and the articles of war against mutiny and desertion, &c. after which a Serjeant is sent with a drummer to the most public places of the garrison, to cry down the credit of the men; and the quarters warned by the pay-master Serjeant of each company not to trust them beyond their daily pay, on pain of losing all that exceed it.

Of Capitulation.

WHEN a Governor or Commandant of a garrison, &c. are reduced to the last extremity, he must send an account of the condition of the place to his Prince or Commander in chief, if time and situation will permit; and to prevent being surprized by false letters, or other inventions of the enemy in order to deceive, he must make use of a cypher agreed on before the siege: he must send these letters by some faithful man, who is proof against bribery and corruption, and whose courage and fidelity can be depended upon.

Call a council of war, and lay before them the necessity you are reduced to, the defects of the garrison, the true state and situation of the fortifications and breaches, &c. the disposition of the enemy, the want of men, stores, ammunition, or any other articles for a longer defence.

Inform them of your proceedings, and give them your journal of what past during the siege, the number of officers, non-commissioned officers, and private men killed, wounded, or taken prisoners, and of those you have left fit for duty; and in short, of every thing that should compel you to the disagreeable necessity of capitulating.

Let all this be signed by the principal officers of the garrison, &c. and if any burghers they should also; and after all is done, chuse the most prudent step, which is, to surrender from real necessity, and an impossibility to defend the place longer; beat the chamade; for which one or more drummers and fifers are ordered to the rampart that is next to the attack, to give notice to the besiegers, that the Governor or Commandant has some proposals to make them; one or more white colours are likewise to be placed upon the breaches or ramparts for the

the same purpose; and one of them at least is to fly during the time of negociation: the same thing is done upon asking a suspension of arms, to bury the dead, or carry off the wounded after a violent attack. The charrade being beat, the fire ceases on both sides; reciprocal hostages are sent; you ask and sometimes obtain several days, in which, if you are not relieved, you surrender according to your capitulation, which ought to be looked upon as sacred and inviolable; and every word ought to be understood in its plain and genuine sense, without any forced construction being put upon it; yet, as this is not always the case, the Governor or Commandant ought to be very cautious that no words are inserted but such as are clear and plain, without admitting of any other sense than that for which they were intended.

Whatever truce, cessation, or terms you make, a cautious Governor or Commandant will never go out of his garrison during the siege; on the contrary, he ought to be doubly diligent whilst they are parlying, reinforce his guards, and be prepared for a surprize.

The conditions of the besieged may be of various kinds, according to the different circumstances or situations in which they are; but those most in practice are.

1. That the garrison shall march through the breach, with their arms, baggage, spare carriages, horses, drums beating, colours flying, fifes playing, matches lighted, some cannon, and mortars with their appurtenances, and ammunition for a certain number of charges, to be conducted in safety to the town agreed on by a certain way and in a limited time*: when the garrison has several

D

days

* For want of this precaution, Santa Cruz says, that eight hundred English, An. 1707, who defended Alcira in Spain, capi-

days to march before it can reach the town agreed on, it is required that the troops should be provided with provision and lodgement during that time.

2. One of the gates shall be delivered up to the besiegers at a certain hour agreed on; and the garrison shall march out in a day or two after according to agreement.

3. The besiegers shall furnish a certain number of covered waggons; that is, such as are not to be searched; besides others to carry off the wounded and sick, which are in a condition to be transported; and in general, all the carriages necessary to convey the garrison's baggage and artillery allowed by the capitulation.

4. That the sick and wounded which cannot be carried off, and are obliged to remain in the place, shall have free liberty to go away with every thing that belongs to them, when they are in a condition to do it; and they shall be furnished, in the mean time, with lodgings and provision, gratis or otherwise.

5. There shall be no indemnification required from the besieged for horses taken from the inhabitants, or for houses burned or destroyed during the siege.

6. That the Governor, the rest of the officers under him, and those belonging to the garrison, the garrison itself, and, in general, every body in the King's service,

capitulated to surrender the place on condition that they should be escorted to Lerida, without mentioning by the shortest way, or a limited time, which should never be omitted in a capitulation: the Spanish general taking the advantage of this error, did indeed escort them to Lerida, but by such round-about ways, that they were three months going where they might have marched in the sixth part of the time; which he says was of great advantage, for they did not get to Lerida till the Spaniards had made themselves masters of it, for want of having a sufficient body of foot in it,

shall

shall freely go out of the place, without suffering reprisals of any nature whatsoever.

7. If those who take possession of the town are of a different religion from that of the inhabitants, it must be inserted in the capitulation, that the inhabitants shall exercise their religion without any molestation.

8. That the inhabitants, and those depending on the place, shall be maintained in all their rights, privileges, and prerogatives.

9. It shall be at the choice of those who have a mind to leave the place to go where they please, with all their effects. It is sometimes and always should be stipulated, that those of the inhabitants who have shewn any partiality to the garrison, shall not be molested on that account, which they might have been before and during the siege.

10. It is also mentioned in the capitulation, that all the powder and ammunition remaining shall be delivered to the besiegers; that the places where mines are ready loaded shall likewise be shewn.

11. That all the prisoners made on both sides during the siege, shall be released.

It must be observed, that a garrison must have provisions and ammunition, at least for three days, in order to be entitled to a composition, without which they will be obliged to be made prisoners of war; but if the besiegers have not enquired into it before the capitulation is signed, it would be injustice to make the garrison prisoners of war, after having found the want of ammunition and provision.

When the besiegers will agree to no other composition than that the garrison shall be made prisoners of war, and the garrison is not in a condition to hold out any longer, it is a general endeavour to make the

conditions as little onerous as possible; and commonly agreed,

1. That the Governor, and the rest of the officers, shall keep their swords, pistols, baggage, &c.

2. That the non-commissioned officers and private men shall not be rifled nor dispersed from their regiments.

3. That the principal officers shall have leave for two or three days to go where they please to settle their affairs; and,

4. When the garrison quits the place, it shall not be permitted to decoy the soldiers, in order to make them desert.

When the capitulation is settled, an officer of artillery from the besiegers comes into the place, who, together with an officer of artillery from the garrison, takes an inventory of all the artillery and ammunition remaining in it; and a commissary of provision enters likewise to take an account of those which remain.

When it is found necessary to surrender, and there are considerable magazines stored with ammunitions and provisions, as much of them as possible should be destroyed before any mention is made of capitulating, that so there may remain no more than what is necessary for capitulating, in order that the enemy may reap no benefit by them. If this should be done after the capitulation is mentioned, the besiegers may insist on a recompence; but what is done before-hand cannot be helped.

As soon as the besieged have delivered the gate of the place to the besiegers, the eldest regiment enters and mounts guard.

The day on which the garrison is to leave the place being come, the besieger's army is put under arms, and ranged into two files, between which the garrison passes: the time of marching being come, the General and the

principal officers head the two files to see the garrison defile before them.

The Governor or Commandant marches at the head, followed by the principal officers; the eldest regiments march commonly the first and last, and the rest in the center, together with the baggage: when there is any horse, it is also divided into three bodies, to march at the head, center, and rear: small detachments of horse and foot are made, to march at the sides of the baggage, and take care of its not being rifled.

The artillery allowed by the capitulation marches in the front.

When the garrison is arrived at the place agreed on, the Governor or Commandant remits the hostages of the besiegers to the escorte; and, when the escorte is arrived at the army, the hostages which the besieged have left for the security of the escorte, carriages, and other things allowed by the army for escorting the garrison, are released.

When the garrison is made prisoners of war, it is likewise escorted to the place agreed on in the capitulation.

In the capitulation where there is a citadel, into which the garrison retires, some such particular conditions should be requested as follow:

That the citadel shall not be attacked at that side next to the place; that the sick and wounded which cannot be transported shall remain in the place, and in the lodgings where they are; and, after being cured, they shall be provided with carriages and passports, to retire to the place agreed on in the capitulation.

No persons should be let into the citadel but such as are useful for its defence: it must be mentioned in the capitulation, that those who are not so, shall be conducted

to a neighbouring place belonging to their sovereign, which place is^t to be named.

Certain time should be allowed for the garrison to march into the citadel; and the besiegers absolutely prohibited from making any works whatsoever for carrying on the approaches towards the reduction of the citadel, during the time prescribed.

A maritime town requires particular conditions relating to the ships which may happen to be in harbour: it ought to be agreed that they shall sail the same day that the garrison leaves the place, or so soon after as the weather will permit them, for the port agreed on: they ought to keep all their guns, ammunition, provision, &c. and, left bad weather should oblige them to enter another harbour belonging to the besiegers, it ought to be mentioned in the capitulation, that they shall be received there and furnished with necessaries to continue their voyage: they should also be provided with passports; and, in short, all the security possible, to avoid any insult from the enemy's ships, during their voyage to the port specified.

Return

To Prove the Cannon taken, if fit for Use.

THE tools necessary to prove them are, a priming iron, a searcher with a reliever, and a searcher with one point: the first searcher is an iron, hollow at one end to receive a wooden handle; and having on the other from four to eight flat springs of about six inches long, pointed and turned outwards at the ends; the reliever is an iron flat ring, with a wooden handle at right angles to it: when a gun is to be searched after it has been fired, this searcher is introduced and turned every way from one end to the other; and if there is any hole, the point of one or the other springs gets into it and remains till the reliever passing round the handle of the searcher, presses the springs together and relieves it; if any of the points catch in the vent, the priming-iron is introduced to relieve it: when there is any hole or roughness in the gun, the distance from the mouth is marked on the outside with chalk: the other searcher has also a wooden handle and a point at the fore end of about an inch long; at right angles to the length about this point is some wax mixed with tallow, and when introduced into the hole or cavity, is pressed in and drawn forwards and backwards; then the impression upon the wax gives the depth, and the length is known by the motion of the searcher: if the hole is a quarter of an inch deep and downwards, the gun is rejected.

Explanation of some of the most material Terms which are in Use in that Part of War which is called a Siege.

A body of troops or an army, shut up in a fortified place to defend it, is called the garrison of the place, which consists of infantry and sometimes of cavalry.

To

To besiege, or lay siege to a place, is to attack and surround it with an army, and approach it by passages made in the ground, and acts in such a manner as to compel him to surrender the place, either by destroying the fortifications, or by reducing the garrison to a number insufficient for its defence.

To blockade a place, is to surround it with different bodies of troops, who shut up all the avenues on every side, and permit nothing to go in or out of the place.

The design of a blockade is to oblige those who are shut up to consume all their provisions, thereby proposing to starve it out, without making any regular attacks upon it.

By this it appears that a blockade must last a long time when the place is well provided with necessaries, for which reason this method of reducing a town is seldom taken but when there is reason to believe the magazines are unprovided, or rather when the nature or situation of the place permit not the approaches to be made which are necessary to attack it in the usual way.

To invest a place, is to surround it with troops on all sides, as in the blockade, disposed in such a manner as that the town can receive no succours either of men or provisions, and is properly a preparation to the besieging it in form.

Sieges may be divided into many kinds, according to the nature of the towns which are attacked, and the manner of attacking them.

The first is the siege royal or true siege, when all the works necessary for the taking of a fortified place are performed, and the enemy is successively beaten from all the fortifications which he defended: this kind of siege is not used but with respect to very considerable and important towns, the fortifications of which require all this form

form and regularity, under the directions of an able engineer, that can discover the defects of a place, and knows how to take an advantage of it.

The siege which does not require all the works of the former, or royal siege, is called simply an attack; and therefore when a body of troops are sent to possess themselves of an important post, a castle, or some other little place occupied by the enemy, and from which they may easily be driven, this undertaking is never called a siege, but an attack.

To assault or storm a work, is only to make a sudden and unsuspected attack upon the part of the rampart where a breach has been made.

To surprize a town, is to slip into it by some stratagem, or finesse, &c. to become master of it by means of some secret intelligence, before the enterprize is so much as suspected by the enemy.

To escalade a place, is to approach it secretly, and to place ladders against the wall or rampart for the troops to mount and get into the place, without being obliged to destroy its works.

To petard a town, is to force the gates with petards, and by that means endeavour to enter it, and become master of the place.

The gates of a town can never be petarded, but when the place is approached unknown to the garrison.

To bombard a town, is to throw into it a great number of bombs to destroy the houses and magazines: this is generally done when it is presumed the place cannot be taken by a siege in form, to punish the inhabitants, or to excite them to mutiny against the garrison for holding out, which may oblige it to surrender.

When an attempt is intended to be made by a sudden attack on a place that has some outworks to be taken first,

without making the ordinary approaches, the assailants are said to * brusque the siege.

A line of circumvallation is a fortification of earth, consisting of a parapet and trench, which are made round the town intended to be besieged, when any molestation is apprehended from parties of the enemy, which may march in order to relieve the place.

The line of contravallation is a line formed in the same manner as the line of circumvallation, to defend the besiegers or the army which forms the siege against the enterprizes of the garrison.

The trench of the circumvallation is towards the field; at the foot of the parapet; and that of the contravallation towards the town, and also at the foot of the parapet.

The line of circumvallation is at present seldom made, because the new forms given to the works carried on in sieges by marshal Vauban have rendered it in a manner useless.

The name of line is also given to a fortification of earth like those just mentioned, behind which an army is posted to cover a tract of ground, which they could not defend without this kind of fortification.

When the matter in hand is only to cover troops in the field against an enemy, and it is intended to oppose him with a fortification to increase the difficulties of his attack, the works which are formed for this purpose are called intrenchments: an intrenchment generally consists of a trench and parapet, with its foot-bank or banquet:

* The French word is brusquer, which signifies to be rough, sharp, or hasty; and as we have no English term expressive of its full sense, we are obliged to adopt it, as we have the words burlesque, risque, and others of the like kind; besides a multitude of technical terms in tactics and fortification.

intrenchments

intrenchments are also made with trees and the principal branches, &c. this is an excellent intrenchment, and is called an abbat. See plate of encampment.

The works are also called intrenchments which are thrown up in a fortification that is attacked, in order to dispute it the longer with the enemy; and these likewise generally consist of a trench and a parapet.

The camp in general is the whole space or extent of ground occupied by an army when it is in the field, and where they pitch their tents, &c.

In a siege, the camp is placed all along the circumvallation, at 120 fathoms distant from the line; the army faces the circumvallation, that is, the soldiers have this line before them, and the town behind.

The line which terminates the camp on the side of the circumvallation is called the head of the camp, and that which terminates it on the side of the town is the rear of the camp.

A quarter at a siege is a part of the army, consisting of one or more brigades, which in general are under the command of a General officer.

Epaulments are elevations of earth of about eight or nine feet high, which are sometimes thrown up during a siege, to cover the cavalry from the fire of the cannon of the place in front and sometimes in flank.

The bivouac, is an extraordinary night-guard which is kept at a siege, to prevent the enemy from throwing any succours into the place.

The trenches, are a kind of way carried on by traverses, or zigzags, which is dug in the ground by the besiegers, without being exposed to the view and fire of the enemy.

The spot where the trench begins is called the tail of the trenches.

To

To open the trenches, is to begin to construct them.

Places of arms are parts of the trenches which encompass the whole front of the attack, and are occupied by the soldiers who sustain and protect the advancement or the head of the works.

Three places of arms are made when the ground near the place besieged will permit; the first, and most distant from the town, is about 300 fathom from the glacis of the covered way, the second 140 fathom, and the third at the foot of the glacis.

Boyoalls are parts, or returns of the trenches, which lead to the place of arms and the town.

A breach, is an opening made in a wall or rampart with cannon or mines, sufficiently wide for a body of troops to enter the works, and drive the besieged out of it: to make the attack the more difficult, they sow the breach with crow-feet, or stop it with chevaux-de-frize.

Affault, or storm, is a sudden and violent attack, made uncovered, on the part of the rampart, where a breach has been made.

A lodgement, is the work made by the besiegers in some part of a fortification to maintain it after the besiegers are drove out.

Fascines are faggots about six feet long and eight inches diameter, or which is the same thing, about twenty-four inches in circumference; they have two bandages placed at the distance of about a foot from each end; sometimes they have three bandages: when they are in raising batteries they are generally sixteen feet long, and are then called saucissons.

Gabions are a kind of cylindrical baskets, without bottoms, about three feet wide, and the same in height. To make these gabions, eight or nine picquets, which ought to be three feet long, and about five or six inches

in

in circumference, are first set up in the ground circularly, and then interlaced with small branches of trees in the same manner as is used in making baskets; these interlacings are fastened at the top and bottom with other little loppings of the branches: when these gabions are to be made use of, they are placed in a situation opposite to that which they had while they were making, that is, with the points of the picquets upwards, which were before fixed in the ground, these points serving to hold fast the fascines which are afterwards placed on the gabions.

Sacks-a-terre are bags about two feet high, and about eight or ten inches diameter, and are nothing but common bags of canvass, or very coarse cloth filled with earth, having their openings or mouths firmly tied up to prevent the earth from falling out.

Wool sacks are the same with the sacks-a-terre, or earth-sacks, except that they are larger, and instead of earth are filled with wool.

Besides those things already mentioned, the following are also made use of in sieges, viz. blinds, chandeliers, mantelets, stuffed gabions, chevaux-de-frize, chauffe-trapes, or crows-feet, and saucissons.

Blinds are a kind of frames, composed of four pieces of wood, two of which are five or six feet in length; the longest are pointed at both ends, and the two others are fastened towards the extremities of the former, at about fifteen inches from their points, the whole forming a rectangular parallelogram, the long sides of which project or jut out beyond the other about fifteen inches.

The blinds are supported against the banks of the trenches, and are so placed as that their longer sides are in a vertical position: their points at the bottom serve to fix them in the earth, and those at the top to hold the fascines that are placed upon them: they are placed
along

along both sides of the bank of the trenches, and others are also laid horizontally on the top of these, the latter being also covered with fascines, so as that the trench is formed into a kind of covered gallery: this disposition is made when the works are far advanced, and in places where the grenades of the besieged too much annoy the soldiers in the trenches.

The term blind is also used to express a kind of hurdle made of the branches of trees behind the soldiers, that they may carry on their works without being seen by the enemy.

Chandeliers are wooden frames, made of two pieces fixed cross ways on the two other pieces, at about four feet asunder; and upon their interjections are erected two vertical pieces, of five feet high, each supported by three buttresses; and the interval of these two pieces is filled up with fascines, to cover the troops upon occasion.

The mantelet, properly speaking, is a kind of table, composed of several planks or madriers, which the men move before them, in nearly a vertical position, by means of wheels and a beam fastened to the axletree, to which axletree also the mantelet is made fast.

The stuffed gabion is a large gabion filled with several materials which render it musket proof; this also serves, like the mantelet, to cover the men employed in the advanced works; the soldier rolls it before him, and works behind it. The stuffed gabion is at present more in use than the mantelet, though the latter is better adapted to answer the purpose; but the facility with which this gabion is constructed, seems to be the reason of its being generally preferred.

The chevaux-de-frize are spars, or long pieces of wood, stuck full of sharp spikes of wood or iron, and used to stop up a narrow passage through which the enemy is to pass, and to stop breaches, &c.

The

The saucisson is a kind of fascine, much larger and longer than the common fort, and is generally used to repair a breach.

Baskets: small baskets are used in sieges, on the parapet of the trench, being filled with earth; they are about one foot and a half high, one foot and a half diameter at top, and eight or ten inches at bottom; so that, when set together, there is a sort of émbrafures to fire through left at their bottom.

Beetles are thick round pieces of wood, of a foot and a half long, and eight or ten inches diameter, having a handle of about four feet long: the use of them are for beating, or rather setting the earth of a parapet, or about pallifades, by lifting it up a foot or two, and letting it fall with its own weight; they are likewise called stampers, and by paviers, rammers.

Calthorps, or crows-feet, are irons with four points or spikes, two or three inches long, and so contrived, that which way soever they fall, one point will stick up, and the other three bear upon the ground; these being thrown upon bridges, or wherever cavalry is expected to pass, very much incommode them by running into the horses feet.

Clayes, are wattles or hurdles made of strong stakes interwoven with osiers, to cover lodgments, or to throw into a ditch that has been drained, for the besiegers to pass the better over the mud.

Fraise, a kind of stakes of pallifades, placed horizontally on the outward slope of a rampart of turf, to prevent the work being taken by surprize: when an army retrenches itself, they often fraise the parapets of their retrenchments in the parts most exposed to be attacked.

Hand-spike, is a piece of ash, elm, or other strong wood, five or six feet long, cut thin at one end, that it may

be easily pushed between things which are to be separated or raised: it is better than a crow of iron, because its length allows a stronger poise.

Herse, also signifies a harrow, which the besieged, for want of chevaux-de-frize, lay in breaches, &c. with the points upwards, to incommode the march of the enemy.

Herfillon, a plank stuck full of nails or spikes for the same use as the herse.

Hurdles, or clays, are made of branches or twigs, interwoven together in the figure of a long square; about five or six feet long, and three, or three and a half broad; the closer they are woven the better; they are used in covering traverses, lodgments, caponeers, coffers, &c. and are covered over with earth, to secure them from the enemy's artificial fire-works, or stones which might be thrown upon them; and likewise to lay upon marshy ground or pass a foss.

Madriers, are long planks of very broad wood used for supporting the earth in mining, carrying on a sap, making coffers, caponeers, galleries, and many other uses at a siege; they are likewise used to cover the mouth of petards after they are loaded, and are fixed with the petards to the gates or other places designed to be forced open: when the planks are not strong enough, they are doubled with plates of iron.

Palisades, stakes or spars of wood, about six or seven inches square, nine feet long, three deep in the ground: they are used to fortify the avenues of open forts, gorges, half-moons, the bottoms of ditches, the parapets of covert-ways, and in general all posts that are liable to surprize, or may be carried by assault: sometimes palisades are planted perpendicularly, and sometimes inclining a little towards the ground next the enemy, that if they should throw ropes about them to pull them up, they may slip off; they are placed in rows about six inches asunder,
and

and those on the covert-way at three feet from and parallel to the parapet or side of the glacis.

Pickets, a small pointed staff shod with iron, and are from three to five feet long, their heads two or three inches in diameter; they serve to drive through fascines or gazons to keep them fast when the earth is bad, or the work raised in haste.

Sand-bags, each contain about a cubical foot of earth, are used for raising parapets in haste, or to repair what is beaten down:

A

MILITARY COURSE.

SECOND PART.

Of Regimental Books.

UPON a review of my former publications, I perceived that a main point for the government and conduct of a battalion (namely, regularity in keeping regimental books, with the advantage attending it) had escaped my memory; which (as it appears capable of improvements) I shall take the liberty of offering my plan, by which means every information can be had of past events; beside having many other advantages which use will make appear.

Government's Book.

TO contain all orders issued from his Majesty, his Viceroy, Secretary at War, Commander in Chief (or General Officer commanding) and the Adjutant-general of his Majesty's forces.

Regulations

Regulations for doing Duty. Dated April 25, 1748.

1. In all duties, whether with or without arms, picquets or courts-martial, the tour of duty shall be from the eldest downwards.

2. Of duties of honour; the first is the King's guard; second, those of the royal family; third, the Captain-general's or Field-marshal's commanding the army; fourth, detachments of the army and out-posts; fifth, General officer's guard; sixth, the ordinary guards either in camp or garrison; seventh, the picquets follow; eighth, general courts-martial, and duties without arms, or of fatigue.

3. An officer who is upon duty, cannot be ordered for any other, before the duty he is upon be finished, except he be on the picquet.

4. If an officer's tour of duty happens when he is on the picquet; he shall be immediately relieved, and go upon that duty; and his tour of the picquet shall pass him, although he should not have been upon it a quarter of an hour.

5. If an officer's tour for the picquet, general court-martial, or duty of fatigue happens, when he is on any other duty, he shall not make good that picquet, court-martial, or duty of fatigue, when he comes off, but his tour shall pass; and in like manner, if he should be on a general court-martial or duty of fatigue, and that his tour for guard or detachment should happen, the guard or detachment shall pass him, and he shall not be obliged to make it up.

6. Guards or detachments which have marched off, are to be reckoned, though they should be dismissed immediately after.

7. General courts-martial, which have assembled, and the members sworn in, shall be reckoned, though they should be dismissed without trying any person.

The king's standard, in the guards, is never to be carried on any guard but on that of his majesty's.

The first colour of regiments is not to be carried on any guard but the King's, Queen's, Prince of Wales's, or Captain General's, he being of the royal family: and, except in those cases, it shall always remain with the regiment. The union is the first colour.

“ GEORGE R.

“ Our will and pleasure is, that the following regulations for the colours, cloathing, &c. of our marching regiments of foot be duly observed and put in execution, at such times as the particulars are or shall be furnished. December 19, 1768.

“ NO Colonel is to put his arms, crest, device, or livery on any part of the appointments of the regiment under his command.

Colours.

“ The King's, or first colour of every regiment, is to be the Great Union throughout.

“ The second colour to be the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the Union in the upper canton; except those regiments which are faced with red, white, or black. The second colour of those regiments which are faced with red or white, is to be the red cross of St. George in a white field, and the Union in the upper canton. The second colour of those which are faced with black, is to be St. George's cross throughout;

Union

Union in the upper canton; the three other cantons, black.

“ In the center of each colour is to be painted, or embroidered in gold Roman characters, the number of the rank of the regiment, within the wreath of roses and thistles on the same stalk; except those regiments which are allowed to wear any royal devices, or ancient badges; on whose colours the rank of the regiment is to be painted, or embroidered towards the upper corner. The size of the colours to be six feet six inches flying, and six feet deep on the pike. The length of the pike (spear and ferril included) to be nine feet ten inches. The cords and tassels of the whole to be crimson and gold mixed.

Drums.

“ The drums to be wood.

“ The front to be painted with the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the King's cypher and crown, and the number of the regiment under it.

Bells of Arms.

“ The bells of arms to be painted in the same manner,

Camp Colours.

“ The camp colours to be eighteen inches square, and of the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the number of the regiment upon them. The poles to be seven feet six inches long, except those of the quarter and rear guards, which are to be nine feet.

Uniform of Officers.

“ The number of each regiment to be on the buttons of the uniforms of the officers and men. The coats

to be lappelled to the waist with the colour of the facing of the regiment, and the colour not to be varied from what is particularly specified hereafter. They may be without embroidery or lace; but, if the Colonel thinks proper, either gold or silver embroidered or laced button-holes are permitted. To have cross pockets, and sleeves with round cuffs, and no slits. The lappels and cuffs to be of the same breadth as is ordered for the men.

Epaulettes.

“ The officers of grenadiers to wear an epaulette on each shoulder. Those of the battalion to wear one on the right shoulder. They are to be either of embroidery or lace, with gold or silver fringe.

Waistcoats.

“ The waistcoats to be plain, without either embroidery or lace.

Swords and Sword-Knots.

“ The swords of each regiment to be uniform, and the sword-knots of the whole to be crimson and gold in stripes. The hilts of the swords to be either gilt or silver, according to the colour of the buttons on the uniforms.

Hats.

“ The hats to be laced either with gold or silver, as hereafter specified, and to be cocked uniformly.

Sashes and Gorgets.

“ The sashes to be of crimson silk, and worn round the waist. The king's arms to be engraved on the gorgets; also the number of the regiment. They are to be either

gilt or silver, according to the colour of the buttons on the uniforms. The badges of those regiments which are entitled to any, are also to be engraved.

Caps, Fufees, and Pouches, for Grenadier Officers.

“ The officers of the grenadiers to wear black bear-skin caps; and to have fufees, shoulder-belts, and pouches. The shoulder-belts to be white or buff, according to the colour of their waistcoats.

Espositoons.

“ The battalion officers to have espositoons.

Gaiters.

“ The whole to have black linen gaiters, with black buttons, and small stiff tops, black garters, and uniform buckles.

Serjeants Coats.

“ The coats of the serjeants to be lappelled to the waist, with the colour of the facing of the regiment. The button-holes of the coat to be of white braid; those on the waistcoats to be plain. The serjeants of grenadiers to have fufees, pouches, and caps. Those of the battalion to have halberts, and no pouches.

Serjeants Sashes.

“ The sashes to be of crimson worsted, with a stripe of the colour of the facing of the regiment, and worn round the waist. Those of the regiments which are faced with red, to have a stripe of white.

Corporals Coats.

“ The coats of the corporals to have a silk epaulette on the right shoulder.

Grenadiers

Grenadiers Coats.

“ The coats of the grenadiers to have the usual round wings of red cloth on the point of the shoulder, with six loops of the same sort of lace as on the button-holes, and a border round the bottom.

Private Mens Coats.

“ The mens coats to be looped with worsted lace, but no border. The ground of the lace to be white, with coloured stripes. To have white buttons. The breadth of the lace which is to make the loop round the button-hole to be about half an inch. Four loops to be on the sleeves, and four on the pockets, with two on each side of the slit behind.

Lappels, Sleeves, and Pockets.

“ The breadth of all the lappels to be three inches, to reach down to the waist, and not to be wider at top than at the bottom. The sleeves of the coats to have a small round cuff, without any slit, and to be made so that they may be unbuttoned and let down. The whole to have cross pockets, but no flaps to those of the waistcoat. The cuffs of the sleeve which turn up, to be three inches and a half deep. The flap on the pocket of the coat to be sewed down, and the pocket to be cut in the lining of the coat.

Shoulder-Belts and Waist-Belts.

“ The breadth of the shoulder-belts to be two inches and three quarters; that of the waist-belt to be two inches; and those regiments which have buff waistcoats, are to have buff-coloured accoutrements. Those which have white waistcoats, are to have white.

Drummers

Drummers and Fifers Coats.

“ The coats of the drummers and fifers of all the royal regiments are to be red, faced and lappelled with blue, and laced with royal lace. The waistcoats, breeches, and lining of the coats, to be of the same colour as that which is ordered for their respective regiments. The coats of the drummers and fifers of those regiments which are faced with red, are to be white, faced, lappelled, and lined with red; red waistcoats and breeches. Those of all the other regiments are to be of the colour of the facing of their regiments; faced and lappelled with red. The waistcoats, breeches, and lining of those which have buff or white coats, are to be red. Those of all the others are to be of the same colour as that which is ordered for the men. To be laced in such manner as the colonel shall think fit. The lace to be of the colour of that on the soldiers coats. The coats to have no hanging sleeves behind.

Drummers and Fifers Caps.

“ The drummers and fifers to have black bear-skin caps. On the front, the king's crest, of silver plated metal, on a black ground, with trophies of colours and drums. The number of the regiment on the back part; as also the badge, if entitled to any, as ordered for the grenadiers.

Grenadiers Caps.

“ The caps of the grenadiers to be of black bear-skin. On the front, the king's crest, of silver plated metal, on a black ground, with the motto, *Nec aspera terrent*. A grenade on the back part, with the number of the regiment on it. The royal regiments, and the six old corps, are to have the crest and grenade, and also the other particulars as hereafter specified. The badge of the royal regiments

is to be white, and set on near the top of the back part of the cap. The height of the cap (without the bear-skin, which reaches beyond the top) to be twelve inches.

Hats of the Whole.

“ The hats of the serjeants to be laced with silver; those of the corporals and private men to have a white tape binding. The breadth of the whole to be one inch and a quarter; and no more to be on the back part of the brim, than what is necessary to sew it down. To have black cockades.

Caps for the Officers and Men of the Regiments of Fuzileers.

“ The regiments of fuzileers to have black bear-skin caps. They are to be made in the same manner as those which are ordered for the grenadiers; but not so high; and not to have the grenade on the back part.

Swords.

“ All the serjeants of the regiment, and the whole grenadier company, to have swords. The corporals and private men of the battalion companies (excepting the regiment of royal highlanders) to have no swords.

“ All the drummers and fifers to have a short sword with a scimitar blade.

Gaiters.

“ The serjeants, corporals, drummers, fifers, and private men, to have black gaiters of the same sort as is ordered for the officers; also black garters and uniform buckles.

Pioneers.

“ Each pioneer to have an axe, a saw, and an apron; a cap with a leather crown, and a black bear-skin front,

on

on which is to be the king's crest in white, on a red ground; also an axe and a saw. The number of the regiment to be on the back part of the cap."

Directions for making up of the contingent Bill.

War Office, Nov. 26, 1765.

"I AM to signify to you his Majesty's pleasure, that for the future all demands for marches, and other contingent charges of the regiment under your command, shall be sent twice in the year, at Midsummer and Christmas, to the War-office directly; you will at the same time transmit to your Agent a duplicate of the said account.

"It is likewise his Majesty's pleasure, that in the said accounts all expences shall be entered under their true heads, and no more charged on any head whatever than what was really and truly paid.

"That in the contingent bills there shall be a column for the dates of the orders upon which the marches were made.

"That the marches shall be set down in the order of time in which they happened.

"That none but the usual and customary charges shall be made, and no extraordinary charges set down, unless vouched by a particular order from the Secretary at War, the date of which order must be specified.

"And, for the more perfect exactness in stating and vouching the aforesaid accounts, you will be pleased to take care that each Captain shall give into the regimental Pay-master an account of what he has expended, signed by himself; which accounts, certified by the Pay-master of the regiment likewise under his hand, shall be delivered to the commanding officer for the time being;

to

to be sent, after examination by him as aforesaid, to the War-office and Agent with the following declaration signed by him :

“ I certify upon honour, as directed by a letter from the Secretary at War, that the exact sums which are charged in this bill for the several contingent expences therein mentioned, are the actual sums which have been advanced, and no more, according to the best of my knowledge and belief, after the most careful examination.

“ I am also to acquaint you, that all the declarations aforesaid, made respectively by the Captains, Pay-master, and by yourself, will be regarded in the same light as returns upon honour.”

Warrant for regulating the non-effective Fund of the several Regiments of Infantry.

“ G E O R G E R.

Feb. 19, 1766.

WHEREAS we have judged it necessary for our service to ascertain the articles which may be charged against the non-effective fund of our marching regiments of foot, excluding at the same time all other articles whatever ; in order that the said fund may be kept apart for the purpose of recruiting, and that the balance which shall remain (after satisfying the charges hereby admitted) may be applied to other public military uses, we have therefore thought fit to order and direct, that for the future no charge shall be made against the said non-effective fund, but what comes fairly and evidently under the following heads, viz.

“ The levy-money and expence of each recruit, and also his subsistence till he joins the regiment.

“ Bounty

“ Bounty-money to discharged men, to carry them home.

“ The subsistence of invalids discharged, and recommended to, our royal bounty of Chelsea-hospital, from the day to which they are subsisted by the regiment, to that on which they are admitted on the pension, or rejected by the board.

“ Expences of beating orders, and attested copies thereof.

“ Expences of debenture warrants.

“ Expences relating to deserters.

“ Expences of the passage of recruiting parties and recruits, by sea, from and to the regiment.

“ And whereas our late royal grandfather, of glorious memory, was pleased to direct, by a regulation in 1743, that the non-effective accounts of the several regiments of infantry should be annually stated on the 24th of June, and that whatever balance remained (after deducting £ 5: for every man wanting to complete, to be carried to the credit of the succeeding account) should be divided among the Captains, partly in aid of their extraordinary expences, and partly as a reward of their care and diligence in completing their companies; which regulation our said late royal grandfather was pleased to suspend during the late war; and whereas we have judged that it will be more for the benefit of our service, that the allowance made to the Captains should be limited, we are pleased to direct that for the future, the non-effective accounts shall continue to be settled annually to the 24th of June, when £ 5. shall be set apart for each man wanting to complete, at the preceding spring review, and carried to the succeeding accounts; after which the balance which shall remain shall be divided among the Captains, provided it should not exceed £ 20. to each Captain: and we are pleased to direct, that the sums so paid to the

the Captains shall be entered as the last charge in the non-effective account of each regiment: and our further will and pleasure is, that in case any surplus shall remain on balance of the non-effective fund, annually stated on the 24th of June, after deducting £ 5. for every man wanting to complete (which must be carried to the credit of the succeeding accounts as aforesaid) and after paying to each Captain their entire allowance of £ 20. that balance shall be carried to the credit of the succeeding year's account: and the several Agents are hereby directed to acquaint our Secretary at War, upon the settling of each year's accounts, with the amount of this surplus or balance for our information.

“ And we do further direct, that all other charges and expences whatever, incurred by our marching regiments of foot, and which have been usually allowed, shall for the future be inserted in the general half-yearly contingent bill, ordered to be transmitted to our Secretary at War, by his letters bearing date the 26th day of November 1765: our further will and pleasure is, that in the keeping and making up the non-effective accounts of each of our said regiments, the following directions be for the future strictly observed:

“ That no more than _____ shall be allowed to any recruiting-officer for each man recruited by him; out of which sum no more than _____ shall be given to each recruit, according to our directions, signified by our Secretary at War, bearing date the 17th of December 1765; but no charge whatever is to be admitted on account of recruits who may desert before they join the regiment:

“ No recruiting-officer shall be allowed credit for the levy-money of any such recruits as shall not be approved of by the commanding officer of each regiment respectively; but their subsistence he shall be allowed.

“ The

“ The non-effective fund shall be charged with the real expence of all the recruits who may die before they join the regiment, provided the day of their death, and the exact bounty-money given them, be certified by the recruiting-officer on the back of the attestation.

“ All subsistence given to recruits before they join the regiment shall be charged separately from the levy-money: the accounts of all recruiting-officers are to be stated and settled on or before the 24th of June: in regiments stationed in Great-Britain, the recruiting accounts are to be signed by the recruiting-officer himself, and by the field-officer commanding at quarters; in regiments stationed abroad, the said accounts are to be signed by the recruiting-officer, and by the Colonel, or one of the field-officers, if either of them shall be in Great-Britain.

“ And our pleasure is, that the above accounts, so signed, shall be good and sufficient vouchers to the Agent for the credit given by him to each recruiting-officer on the head of recruiting.

“ That in all future states of the regimental accounts given in to the reviewing-general, the number of recruits for which levy-money and subsistence are charged, shall be particularly and separately specified.

“ And whereas it has been the practice in some of our marching regiments of foot, to allow the Captains without accounts, the subsistence of the vacant men in their respective companies, arising from vacancies which happen between the days whereon each Captain usually receives the subsistence of his company; it is our express order, that for the future the Captains shall account for the vacant subsistence of each man who shall die, desert, or be discharged between the abovementioned periods, from the date of such death, desertion, or discharge; and that the non-effective fund shall have credit for the vacant

F

subsistence

subsistence of every man from the day on which he is no longer intitled to subsistence.

“ We are further pleased to direct, that every Colonel shall himself carefully examine the non-effective account, previous to its being laid before the reviewing general: he is likewise to certify under his hand, that he believes it to be fair and exact; and the reviewing-general shall report to us any articles which shall appear to him to be charged contrary to these our orders; as likewise whether proper credit be given to the non-effective fund for the whole vacant subsistence.

“ All the aforesaid orders, regulations, and directions, we strictly charge and command all Reviewing-generals, Colonels, Commanding-officers, and Agents of our regiments of infantry, and all others whom they may concern, to follow and obey, under pain of our highest displeasure.

“ Given at our court at St. James's, this 19th day of February 1766, in the sixth year of our reign.

“ By his Majesty's command,

“ BARRINGTON.”

Warrant for regulating the Attendance of Officers belonging to the several Regiments of Infantry.

“ GEORGE R.

Feb. 11, 1767.

“ WHEREAS we are pleased by our warrant, bearing date the 27th day of July 1764, to establish certain rules and regulations for the attendance of the several officers of our regiments of foot within our kingdom of Great-Britain, with their respective corps; and whereas we have since found it necessary for the good of our service to establish some farther regulations for the attendance of the said officers; we have therefore judged it proper

to

to revoke and annul our warrant above-mentioned, and we do hereby revoke and annul the same: and our farther will and pleasure is, that in lieu thereof, and for the more effectual maintenance of good order and discipline in our said regiments of foot, the following rules be strictly observed; for the exact execution of which the Colonel and Field-officer commanding each regiment are to be responsible.

“ 1st. That with each battalion of infantry there be always present one Field officer and three Captains; and one Subaltern with each company.

“ 2d. That the Colonel or Field-officer commanding each regiment may grant leave of absence to such other officers whose private affairs may require it, taking care always to detain, or from time to time to call in, a sufficient number of officers to do the duty of the regiment, in case it should be so situated as to require the attendance of more officers than we have hereby directed to be constantly present.

“ 3d. That the officers appointed to carry on the recruiting service shall not be included in the number hereby fixed for the constant duty of the regiment, or in the number of those who shall be further called in by the Commanding-officer for that duty.

“ 4th. That the monthly return of each regiment be made up and transmitted as usual to our Secretary at War, and to the Adjutant-general of our forces; and that the return of the absent officers which we have directed to be made on the fourteenth of each month, shall in like manner be made up and transmitted from the head quarters of every regiment in England to our Secretary at War, and to the Adjutant-general of our forces; and from the regiments in North-Britain to the officer commanding on that station for the time being; and the Commanding-officer by whom the said returns

shall be signed, is carefully to examine the same, as he is to be responsible that they are in every respect conformable to our regulations.

“ 5th. That the number of officers hereby ordered to be present, shall remain with their commands until they shall be relieved; and, notwithstanding the returns are ordered to be transmitted on the 1st and 14th of each month, yet the officers are to continue at quarters during all the intermediate time, and the Commanding-officer is hereby enjoined not to permit them to absent themselves from the duty they are employed on, except in cases of great emergency, and then but for two days only; and all leaves so granted are to be specified in the next return, with the reasons for granting them.

“ 6th. That no application shall be made either to us, or to the Commander in chief of our forces, for a leave of absence for any officer of our said regiments, except through the Colonel or Field-officer commanding the regiment; and that all such applications shall be so regulated, that no particular officer shall be absent from his duty too long at one time: the same caution is to be observed in limiting the leaves granted by the Colonel or officer commanding each regiment.

“ 7th. That every officer, whether taken from the half-pay or otherwise, on being appointed to the regiment shall join it within four months at farthest from the date of his commission, unless he shall have obtained a particular leave of absence, which is not to be granted except on very cogent reasons.

“ 8th. That if any officer so appointed shall exceed the time hereby limited, without a leave obtained for that purpose, he shall be returned absent without leave; and the date of his commission is to be specified in the return, it being our firm intention immediately to supersede

fece any officer who shall neglect to pay due obedience to this our order.

“ 9th. That every officer newly appointed, and who has never before been in our service, shall upon joining his regiment remain in quarters until he shall be perfected in all regimental duty.

“ 10th. That no officer belonging to any of our said regiments stationed in Great-Britain shall go out of the kingdom without leave obtained by us, the warrant for which is to express the time for which the leave is granted, and is to be entered in the office of our Secretary at War.

“ 11th. All officers while present with their corps, are constantly to wear their uniforms.

“ 12th. Every officer is to be present with his regiment annually in England by the 10th day of March, and in Scotland by the 10th of April, and remain with it till after the spring review: and this our order is upon no account to be dispensed with, except a particular leave shall be obtained for that purpose from us, or the Commander in chief of our forces; and no such leave shall be applied for, except in cases of absolute and unavoidable necessity.

“ 13th. All recruiting-officers and recruits are to join their respective corps in England by the 10th of March, and in Scotland by the 10th of April; as we do expect that our regiments on each station shall be complete annually by those respective days.

“ And we do hereby direct that all and several the rules and regulations hereby established be punctually observed, upon pain of our highest displeasure. Given at our court at St. James's the 11th day of February 1767, in the seventh year of our reign.

“ By his Majesty's command,

War-office,
a true Copy.

“BARRINGTON.”

F 3

Warrant

*Warrant for regulating the Attendance of Officers
belonging to Regiments on Foreign Stations.*

“ GEORGE R.

Feb. 11, 1767.

“ WHEREAS we have thought it necessary for the good order and discipline of our forces stationed in our garrisons and other dominions beyond the seas, to establish certain rules and regulations for the due attendance of the officers belonging to, or who shall be appointed to commissions in our said forces, our will and pleasure is, that the same be observed strictly as follows :

“ 1st. That when any officer who may be in Britain or Ireland shall be appointed to a commission in any of our regiments stationed abroad, he shall set out to join his regiment within four months at farthest from the date of his commission, unless he shall have obtained our leave of absence for a longer time ; it being our firm intention to supersede any officer who shall disobey this our order.

“ 2d. Application shall not be made to us for farther leave except on very extraordinary occasions ; and it shall then be made through the Colonel of the regiment, if he is in Britain.

“ 3d. All leaves granted by us, for any term beyond the four months above-mentioned, shall express the particular time for which they are granted, and shall be entered in the office of our Secretary at War, and all Colonels are hereby required to take care that all officers when newly appointed to their respective regiments, be apprized of these our orders ; and report to us if they shall find that they are not strictly complied with.

“ 4th. The officer commanding on each station shall be made acquainted with the leaves so granted, and shall transmit

transmit the same to the respective regiments, in order that they may be inserted in the monthly returns.

“ 5th. A list of all officers newly appointed shall be transmitted by our Secretary at War, by the earliest opportunity, to the Colonel of the regiment, if he be in Britain; as also to the Commander or Governor where the respective regiments are stationed, with the dates of their commissions.

“ 6th. The said list shall be transmitted by the said Commander or Governor to each regiment under his command; and when any officer shall be returned not joined, the date of his commission shall be inserted in the return; to the end that we may be satisfied of the due performance of our commands herein.

“ 7th. When any officer belonging to a regiment stationed abroad shall obtain leave of absence from the Commander in chief, Governor or Commanding-officer, it shall be for a limited time only; which time shall be specified in the returns, and before the expiration thereof he shall join his regiment.

“ 8th. But as from the uncertainty of a sea passage, it may sometimes happen that an officer may not return exactly to the day prescribed by his leave, the Commanding-officer is in that case to enquire and make proper allowances; the whole of which is to be explained in the next return,

“ 9th. And whereas it may be necessary in some particular cases to prolong the leaves so granted, the Colonel of the regiment is upon such occasions to make the application, in order that it may be properly laid before us, and if granted, the same is to be signified by our Secretary at War to the respective Commander or Governor, with the particular time for which each leave is prolonged; in order that the officer commanding the regiment may be acquainted therewith.

F 4

“ 10th.

“10th. But in order to prevent the necessity of frequent applications to us upon this head, it is our pleasure that such leave shall in the first instance be granted, as is reasonable and sufficient; it not being our intention to prolong the same, except in very particular cases and circumstances which could not have been foreseen by our said Governors or Commanders.

“11th. The respective Commanders in chief, Governors, and Field-officers are to be responsible that, according to the situation and circumstances of each regiment, there are always a sufficient number of officers present to do duty.

“And we do hereby direct that all and several the rules and regulations hereby established be punctually observed, upon pain of our highest displeasure. Given at our court of St. James's, the 11th day of February 1767, in the seventh year of our reign.

“By his Majesty's command,

War-office.

“BARRINGTON.”

Warrant for regulating the Recruiting and Reviewing of the several Regiments of Foot upon Foreign Stations.

“GEORGE R.

Jan. 8, 1768.

“WHEREAS it hath been humbly represented unto us, that it would greatly tend to the preservation of good order and discipline in our several marching regiments of foot, which are or may be upon foreign stations, to have some certain regulations laid down by us for reviewing and recruiting those regiments, as well as keeping them complete in arms, accoutrements, and cloathing; our will and pleasure is, that the following rules and regulations

tions be for this purpose strictly observed for the future by our Commander in chief in North America, and by all our Governors and officers commanding our regiments abroad, and by all other military officers whom it may concern :

“ 1st. That all the old and unserviceable men, who are now in any of our regiments above-mentioned, be discharged as soon as possible, and such as are proper objects recommended to our bounty of Chelsea ; care being however taken at the same time not to diminish the numbers of any regiment, so far as to prejudice the service on which it may be employed ; and it is our will and pleasure, that this duty, which we esteem to be indispensable, should be observed, not only now, but constantly ; as we expect that our said regiments shall at all times be maintained in such a state of completeness, strength, and discipline, as always to be prepared for immediate service.

“ 2d. That constant care be taken to keep as many parties employed upon the recruiting service, as the number of vacancies and the state of the regiment may require.

“ 3d. That positive orders be given to all officers who shall be sent with the command of recruiting parties, that they do not enlist any men but such as are in every respect fit for our service ; and that they may be informed that a most strict examination will be regularly made of their recruits, and that such of them who do not answer the instructions shall be rejected.

“ 4th. That for the future, the following respective sums shall be allowed to officers sent upon the recruiting service, from the several stations abroad, towards bearing the expence of passage, viz,

From

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
From North America, the West Indies, } and Africa - - - - - }	12	10	0
From Minorca - - - - -	7	17	6
From Gibraltar - - - - -	5	5	0

and that those sums be advanced to each officer when he shall be sent on the recruiting service by the Pay-master of the regiment, and shall be placed as a charge against the non-effective fund.

“ 5th. And whereas it is essential to the good of the service, that the arms, accoutrements, and cloathing of our said regiments should be always kept complete, and in proper serviceable order; and that the strictest attention should be had, not only to the discipline, but to the interior œconomy of each corps; for this purpose our will and pleasure is, that each of our said regiments (provided it may not be inconsistent with the service on which they may be severally employed) shall be assembled annually, at the most convenient season, and reviewed and inspected by the Commander in chief, Governor, Brigadier, or any other officer under whose command it may happen to be, by whom the following returns are to be made up and sent as soon as may be practicable, after the review and inspection hereby directed, to our Secretary at War and Adjutant-general of our forces respectively, according to the form herewith transmitted, in order to their being laid before us, viz.

A return of officers present and absent.

A return of non-commissioned officers and private men.

A general return of the regiment,

A field return.

A return of the state of the arms, accoutrements, and cloathing.

“ 6th. That the officer who shall respectively review and inspect each regiment, do add such further remarks and

and observations of his own, as may, in every respect, tend to give us a full information of the actual state and condition of each regiment.

“ 7th. That if from the circumstances of our service, any regiment shall be so situated that it cannot be assembled, the different parts of it shall be inspected in such a manner as the Commander in chief, Governor, Brigadier, or other officer, under whose command it may happen to be, shall think most convenient for the service; and that the returns according to the forms which are now ordered, shall be made up and transmitted by the earliest opportunity; and we do hereby direct that all and several the rules and regulations hereby established, be punctually observed upon pain of our highest displeasure. Given at our court at St. James's the 8th day of January 1768, in the eighth year of our reign.

“ By his Majesty's command,

War-office.

“ BARRINGTON.”

Of purchasing and selling Commissions,

“ IT is the King's pleasure, that for the future when any officer in the army shall desire leave to sell his commission, he shall sign a memorial stating the grounds on which he forms his expectation of being permitted to dispose of his commission, and praying that he may be allowed to sell it at the regulated price to any person whom his Majesty shall appoint.

If such memorial be in the regiment, he shall deliver his memorial to the officer commanding at quarters, who shall send the same to his Colonel (if within the realm) who must approve thereof, previous to its being laid before his Majesty: but in the absence of the Colonel, if the Lieutenant-colonel be not at quarters, the memorial shall

shall be sent to him, in order that he may transmit it to the war-office, certifying under his hand the truth of the facts therein contained, as far as his knowledge or belief may extend.

“ In North America these memorials shall be transmitted, certified as aforesaid, to the Commander in chief; in Gibraltar and Minorca to the Governor or Commandant for the time being on shore stations; but in the West Indies they may be sent directly to the war office: it is however the King’s pleasure, that a duplicate at the same time be always sent to the Colonel of the regiment. Given at the War-office this 23d day of December 1775.

“ BARRINGTON.”

Marching Regiments,	Prices.	Differences,
Lieutenant-Colonel, - - -	3,500	900
Major, - - - - -	2,600	1,100
Captain, - - - - -	1,500	550
Captain-licutenant with rank } of Captain, - - - - }	950	400
Lientenant, - - - - -	550	150
Ensign, - - - - -	400	400
In Fuzileer } First Lieutenant, -	550	100
Regiments. } Second ditto, -	450	
To rise to Lieutenant-colonel by purchase, - - - -		3,500

General Book.

TO contain Copies of Marches, Routes, General Reviews, General Returns, Monthly Returns, &c.

Description

General Return of the Country, Size, Age, and Time of Service of the Men in his Majesty's Regiment of Foot, including Serjeants, Corporals, Drummers, Fifers, and Music. This Day of 17

Number of Men of each Country in the several Companies.										Ages of the Men, from 17 and upwards to 55 Years and upwards.													
COMPANIES.										COMPANIES.													
Countries.	Colonel.	Lieut. Colonel.	Major.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Total of countries.	Years of Age.	Colonel.	Lieut. Colonel.	Major.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Captain.	Totals of each Age.		
English.											55												
Scotch.											50												
Irish.											45												
Foreign.											40												
											30												
											25												
											20												
											18												
											17												
Total.											Tot.												

Size of the Men in each Company, from 5 Feet 5 Inches and under, to 6 Feet 2 inches and upwards.				Service from 1 Year and under to 35 Years and upwards.					
Size. Ft. Inch.	Companies as above.			Total of each Size	Years.	Companies as above.			Total Years.
6 2					35				
6 1 1/2					30				
6 1					25				
6 0 1/2					20				
6 0					15				
5 11 1/2					10				
5 11					9				
5 10 1/2					8				
5 10					7				
5 9 1/2					6				
5 9					5				
5 8 1/2					4				
5 8					3				
5 7 1/2					2				
5 7					1				
5 6 1/2									
5 6									
Under.									
5 6									
5 5									
Total					Total				

A MILITARY COURSE.

Officers ranks and names, according to their rank only in the regiment.		Country.		Years of Service.		Dates of their several Commissions in the Army.									
Rank]	[Names.	English.	Scotch.	Irish.	Foreigners.	Age.	Service.	Ensign, or Cornet.	Second Lieut.	Lieute- nant.	Captain Lieut.	Captain.	Major.	Lieut. Col.	Colonel.
Colonel															
Lieut. Col.															
Major															
Capt.															
Lieut.															
Lieuts.															
2d Lieuts.															
Ensigns.															
Chaplain.															
Adjutant.															
Quarter-Master.															
Surgeon.															
Mate.															

General Return of the Names, Country, Age, Time, and Service of the Officers in his Majesty's
Regiment of Foot, with the Dates of the several Commissions each Officer has had to the Day of 17

Staff Officers.

*Remarks made by the Reviewing General on his
Majesty's Regiment of Foot,
Day of* 17

OFFICERS.

PROPERLY armed, ready in their exercise, salute well, in good time, and with a good air; their uniform genteel, two years old, but still very good; a good corps that makes a very handsome appearance.

MEN.

A very good body, well limbed, but some of them old and wounded; clean and well dressed; accoutrements well put on; very well sized in the ranks; the Serjeants expert in their duty, drummers perfect in their beatings, and fifers play correct.

EXERCISE.

In very good time, and with life; carry their arms well; march, wheel, and form well.

MANŒUVRES.

Performed with great exactness, in quick and slow time.

FIRINGS.

Six and thirty rounds, close and well.

By companies from the right and left to the center, two rounds; twice from the center to the right and left by companies; once by grand divisions from the right and left to the center; by four right-hand companies and the grenadiers, and the four left-hand companies, and the light infantry, one round; right wing of the battalion and left wing, one round; battalion obliquely to the right and to the left, one round each;

each; battalion to the front, one round by the above firings, advancing and retreating: left-hand companies and the grenadier company before they retreat by files, and the four right-hand companies and the light company, when marched up to their intervals, one round each; in the square by the faces and companies, one round each; street-firing, advancing and retreating, one round each; a volley.

R E C R U I T S.

Such as will mend the regiment.

A R M S.

Good and clean kept; halberds bad; drums good; a few swords wanting, and some bad.

A C C O U T R E M E N T S.

Good.

C L O A T H I N G.

Of last year, but still pretty good and clean.

A C C O U N T S.

Kept regular.

C O M P L A I N T S.

None.

U N I F O R M.

Red, lappelled and faced with blue, white waistcoats and breeches, white buttons.

A very fine regiment, well appointed, well disciplined, complete, and fit for service.

Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. who have died in his Majesty's Regiment of Foot since the Day of 17							
Names.	Stations.	In what Company.	Where.	When.	Of what Diforder.	D I E D.	
						Debtor to his Captain. £. s. d.	Creditor to his Captain. £. s. d.

Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. discharged from his Majesty's of Foot, since the Day of 17					Regiment	
Names.	Stations.	DISCHARGED.				If recommend- ed to the In- valids.
		From what Company.	Where.	When.	By whom,	

Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. who have deserted from his Majesty's of Foot, since the Day of 17.					Regiment					
Names.	Stations.	Deserted.			Surrendered.	When retaken.				
		From what Company.	From whence.	When.			How often.	To whom.	When.	

Return of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. tried by Court-martial in his Majesty's					Regiment	
- of Foot, since the						
Names.	Stations.	Confin'd by.	Tried.		Sentenced or acquitted.	If pardoned or part of punishment remitted.
			When.	General Regimental or Crime. Garrison.		
Day of	17	Refident.				

Succession of Non-commissioned Officers, &c. in his Majesty's Regiment of Foot,		from the Day of		17		P R O M O T E D.				Casualties.	
						In what Company.	When.	By what Field-officer.	In whose room.	How.	When.
Rank.	Names.	Years when promoted in the Corps.		In what Company.	When.	By what Field-officer.	In whose room.	How.	When.	Casualties.	
		Of Age.	Of Serv.							How.	When.
Serjeant- Majors.											
Q. Master- Serjeants.											
Serjeants.											
Corporals.											
Drum- Majors.											
Fife- Majors.											
Musick- Masters.											

Regiment Succession of Drummers, Fifers, Music, and Private Men in his Majesty's Day of 17 of Foot, from the										
Names.	Age.		When enlisted.		Size after growing.		Description.		Where born.	
	Feet.	Inches.	Feet.	Inches.	Feet.	Inches.	Quarters.	Hair.	Eyes.	Complexion.
Colour of		Marks of Features.		Trade or Occupation.		By whom.				
Enlisted.		Where.		When.		Former Service.		In what Corps.		
Year.		Day.		Months.		Years.		Where.		
Town.		County.		Year.		In what Corps.		From what Corps.		
Casualties.										

Return of the Officers present and absent of his Majesty's																			
by 14th of 17																			
Regiment of Foot, commanded																			
Quarters of the Regt.	Respective Companies at each Quarters.	Number of Officers present.					Staff.												
		Colonel.	Lieut. Col.	Major.	Capt.	Lieuts.	Ensigns	Chaplain.	Adjutant.	Quarter-Master.	Surgeon.	Matr.							
Total																			
Names.	Absent Officers.					Vacant Officers and			Names and Rank of Officers on										
	Since what Time.	By whose Leave.	For what Time.	For what Time.	For what Time.	by what Means.	Duty,	and on what Duty.	Duty,	and on what Duty.	Duty,	and on what Duty.							

COMPANIES BOOK.

To contain the standing Orders of the Battalion, and such others as may be ordered to be entered in that book, as also several forms of Rolls and Returns, &c.

A MILITARY COURSE.

Morning Report of		Company,		
the	Day of	17		
Serjeants.	Present fit for Duty	—	Names.	
	On Duty	— — —		
	Total			
Drummers.	Present fit for Duty	—		
	On Duty	— — —		
	Total			
Fifers.	Present fit for Duty	—		
	On Duty	— — —		
	Total			
Musicians.	Present fit for Duty	—		
	On Duty	— — —		
	Total			
Rank and File.	Present fit for Duty	—		
	Ditto not fit	— — —		
	On Duty	— — —		
	Sick in	Camp		— — —
		Quarters		— — —
		Barracks		— — —
		Infirmary		— — —
	Hospital	— — —		
	Recruiting	— — —		
	On Furlough	— — —		
	On Command	— — —		
Absent by Leave	— — —			
Ditto without	— — —			
Prisoners	— — —			
Total				
Officer to sign here.				

RIGHT OF FRONT RANK.	RIGHT OF CENTER RANK.	RIGHT OF REAR RANK.
ELDEST SERJEANT.	YOUNGEST.	SECOND SERJEANT.
LEFT OF FRONT RANK.	LEFT OF CENTER RANK.	LEFT OF REAR RANK.
ELDEST CORPORAL.	YOUNGEST.	SECOND CORPORAL.

A W E E K L Y P A Y - N O T E .								
One Week's Pay and Arrears for		from the		of	17	Company,	to the	
both Days inclusive.								
						£.	s.	d.
To	Serjeants	—	—	—	—			
To	Corporals	—	—	—	—			
To	Drummers	—	—	—	—			
To	Fifers	—	—	—	—			
To	Mufician	—	—	—	—			
To	Private Men	—	—	—	—			
		£. s. d.						
To	flints	—	—	} ——— }				
To	sheet lead for flints	—	—					
To	cartridge paper	—	—					
To	repair of arms	—	—					
		Total.						
<p>Received the above sum, in full of all demands,</p> <p>to the day of 17</p> <p style="text-align: right;">A. B. Pay-master Serjeant.</p>								

Return

Return of Provisions bought for		Company in his Majesty's		Regiment of Foot,										
from		to		17										
Messes.	No. in each Mess.	Quantity and Quality.										laid out for each Mess.		
		Beef at per lb.		Mutton and Pork at per lb.		Bread or Potatoes.		Meal and Salt.		Vegetables.			Fish.	
		lb.	qrs.	lb.	qrs.	lb.	qrs.	S.	D.	S.	D.	L.	S.	D.
Serjeant	1													
Serjeant	1													
Serjeant	1													
Corporal	1													
Corporal	1													
Corporal	1													
Married	—													
Sick	—													
On Furlough	—													
On Command	—													
Recruiting	—													
Officers servants	—													
Total effective														

A. B. Pay-master Serjeant.

Not Messing.

Report of the Barracks, Messes, and Regimental Infirmary of his Majesty's Regiment of Foot, at the Day of 17		, rooms, galleries, and stairs		No. of Patients.						
I visited the Barracks, found them attended, Complaints		Quality and Quantity.				What number in each messes.				
Messes supplied with		Beef.	Mutton.	Pork.	Broth.	Fish.	Vegetables.	Bread or Potatoes.	Meal and Salt.	No. of Messes.
Colonels	—									
Lieut. Colonels	—									
Majors	—									
Grenadiers	—									
Light Infantry	—									
Captains										
Total										

To the Officer commanding his Majesty's Regiment of Foot.

Subaltern to sign here.

If the Regiment is encamped or billeted, a part of the head of this report must then be altered.

Inspection Report of Arms, Accoutrements, &c. in - Regiment of Foot, the		Company in the 17 Day of																																
		Sergeants.			Drummers.			Fifers.			Pioneers.																							
State of Arms, Accoutrements, including those in Store.		Firelocks.	Iron Ramrods.	Bayonets.	Swords.	March Case.	Powder Horn.	Ball Bags.	Shoulder Belts.	Bayonet Belts.	Slings.	Cartouch Boxes.	Halberts.	Sabres.	Swords.	Sword Belts.	Drums.	Drum Sticks.	Drum Cases.	Swords.	Sword Belts.	Fifes.	Bras Cases.	Swords.	Sword Belts.	Aprons.	Hatchets.	Saws.	Spades.	Pick-axes.				
Serviceable																																		
Repairable																																		
Unserviceable																																		
Wanting —																																		
Total																																		
State of Company.		Private																																
		Fifers																																
		Music																																
		Drummers																																
		Corporals																																
		Sergeants																																
		Under Arms																																
		Sick																																
		Furlough																																
		Command																																
		Recruiting																																
		Prisoners																																
		Absent by leave																																
		Ditto without																																
		Wanting																																
		Total																																

Officer that inspected the
Company to sign here.

Method of sending for the Colours.

THE officers having taken their posts, the colours are thus to be sent for, viz.

The Major orders the grenadier drummers and fifers to beat and play the drummer's call; which is a warning for the officers who carry the colours, the drummers, and fifers: he then orders a flam, upon which the officers, drummers, and fifers, face to the right, the officers advancing their arms at the same time; and, on the immediate sound of another flam, they march to the head of the grenadiers, and turn to their proper front. The Captain then orders the company to advance their arms, and marches off in the following order:

Captain.

Lieutenants.

Ensigns.

Fife-major.

Fifers.

Drum-major.

Drummers.

First division of grenadiers.

* * * * * Serjeant.

* * * * *

Serjeant * * * * *

Second division of grenadiers.

* * * * *

* * * * *

* * * * * Serjeant.

So soon as the Captain comes to the place where the colours are lodged, he must draw up his company three deep, with the Serjeants in the rear; and then give the following words of command:

Fix

Fix your bayonets.

Shoulder your firelocks.

When the Ensigns receive the colours, the Captain gives the word;

Present your arms.

Upon which the grenadiers present their arms, the Serjeants charge their halberts, and drummers and fifers beat and play a point of war; after which the Captain orders;

Shoulder your firelocks.

Advance your arms.

To the right (or left) wheel.

March.

They march back to the battalion, beating and playing the grenadiers march.

When the colours approach the left flank of the battalion, the commanding officer orders, *Present your arms*, and *face the battalion to the left*, the drummers and fifers beating and playing a point of war, and the music, "God save great George our King." The Captain of grenadiers makes two wheels to the left; the second division of grenadiers moves up to dress with the first; and both open their ranks in the second wheel, so as to be in a direct line with the ranks of the battalion; when the grenadiers halt, the music, drummers, and fifers, cease; on which the commanding officer gives the word,

To the right, as you were.

The whole face to the right; the Captain of grenadiers followed by his Lieutenants; behind whom the Ensigns, with the colours, move briskly to the right; the officers and colours march in front of the line of officers; the fifers and drummers between the officers and front rank of the battalion; the front rank of grenadiers between the front and center of the battalion; the center rank of

grenadiers between the center and rear rank; and the rear rank of grenadiers along the rear rank of the battalion: when the Ensigns come to the center of the battalion, they are to fall in, and dress with the line of officers. The grenadiers, having returned to their post on the right, get the words of command from their Captain,

Turn to the front.

Halt.

Shoulder your firelocks.

Unfix your bayonets.

Shoulder.

N. B. The Ensigns have their arms advanced in going for the colours, as well as the grenadier officers and Serjeants; but in returning they display flying colours instead of their arms.

Every officer should, upon the colours passing by, take off his hat, this being a respect due to the colours: the officers who carry them are not to take off their hats in return, except when they salute with them.

Turning out of the Line.

THE line turn out without arms whenever the General commanding in chief comes along the front of the camp.

When the lines turn out, the private men are to be drawn up in a line with the bells of arms; the Corporals on the right and left of their respective companies; the picquet forms behind the colours, their accoutrements on, but without arms.

The Serjeants draw up one pace in the front of the men, dividing themselves equally.

The

The officers to be drawn up in ranks according to their commissions, in the front of the colours; two Ensigns taking hold of the colours.

The field-officers advance before the Captains.

When the commander in chief comes along the line, the camp-colours on the flanks of the parade are to be struck and planted opposite to the bells of arms; the officers arms are to be planted between the colours, and the drums piled up behind them; the halberts are to be planted between, and on each side of the bells of arms, the hatchets turned from the colours.

Forming and returning the Picquet.

THE officers and men for the picquet being ready dressed and accoutred, as soon as the drummer's call is beat, the men take their arms and form in the streets before the tents; the orderly Serjeants and Corporals having likewise their arms, are then to examine the men and form those of their respective companies into ranks, and dress with the line of tents.

When the retreat begins, they are to march them forward, the front rank even with the bells of arms, each orderly Serjeant and Corporal advancing three paces, and remain at the head of his men. The Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers for the picquet go to the head of the colours; and, taking their arms and drums, wait there: as soon as the retreat is ended, the Adjutant orders, *Advance to form the picquet*; upon which the whole march forward in three ranks to the lines of parade; the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers of the picquet, as well as the orderly Serjeants and Corporals, advancing twelve paces before the front rank; and when

they are come to the ground, the Adjutant orders, *Halt*; upon which the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers face to the right about: he then orders, *Form the picquet*, at which command, the whole, except the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers of the picquet, face to the right and left inwards to the center: *March*, they march together, closing to the center, and the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers, take their posts; the orderly Serjeants and Corporals close likewise, but so as to be opposite to the men of their respective companies, to answer for what may be wanting or amiss. *Halt*, the picquet faces to the front, and the orderly Serjeants and Corporals to the picquet.

The Adjutant is then to go through the ranks; and after having examined the whole, and found all complete, he orders all the orderly Serjeants and Corporals to their respective companies to call the rolls: they are to face to the right and left outwards, and march regularly with halberts and firelocks recovered; the Adjutant is then to acquaint the Captain that his picquet is ready.

The Captain and his officers are then to examine the men's arms and ammunition; which being done, he orders, *Prime and load*.

As soon as the Colonel or Field-officer has acquainted the Captain that he may return the picquet, the Captain having cautioned the men to be ready to turn out at a moment's warning, orders, *Picquet, to the right and left to your companies*; upon which the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers move three paces to the front, and the men face to the right and left outwards: *March*; they march until they come opposite to the bells of arms of their respective companies, wait-

A MILITARY COURSE. 123

ing for the next word of command, *Halt*; upon which they face to the bells of arms, and the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers, face to the colours: *Lodge your arms*; they march together, and having carefully lodged their arms, return to their tents; the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers doing the same.

A D J U T A N T ' s B O O K .

To contain the contents of Companies Book, Returns, Rosters, &c.

Monthly

Regimental Duty Tables for Captains, Guards, &c.

Days Months.

Names	May					June					July					When Absent	When joined
	1	9	17	22	27	1	8	15	21	26	1	8	14	20	26		
A																	
C	2	10									2	9	15	21	27	On Leave, 17 May	1 July
E	3	11	18	23	28	2	9	16	22	27						On Command, 2 July	
G	4	12				3	10	17	23	28	3	10	16	22	28	Aid de Camp, 18 May	2 June
I	5	13	19	24	29	4	11				4	11	17	23	29	On Leave, 17 June	3 July
L	6	14				5	12	18			5	12	18	24	30	Recru. 19M. & 19 Jun.	4 & 29 Jun.
N	7	15	20	25	30	6	13	19	24	29	6					On Leave, 11 July	
O	8	16	21	26	31	7	14	20	25	30	7	13	19	25	31		

Picquets or Reserve Guards.

Names	May					June					July					When Absent	When joined
	1	9	17	22	27	1	8	15	21	26	1	8	14	20	26		
A																	
C	2	10									2	9	15	21	27	On Leave, 17 May	1 July
E	3	11	18	23	28	2	9	16	22	27						On Command, 2 July	
G	4	12				3	10	17	23	28	3	10	16	22	28	Aid de Camp, 18 May	2 June
I	5	13	19	24	29	4	11				4	11	17	23	29	On Leave, 17 June	3 July
L	6	14				5	12	18			5	12	18	24	30	Recru. 19M. & 23 June	4 & 4 Ju.
N	7	15	20	25	30	6	13	19	24	29	6					On Leave, 11 July	
O	8	16	21	26	31	7	14	20	25	30	7	13	19	25	31		

Courts Martial.

Names	May					June					July					When Absent	When joined
	1	9	17	22	27	1	8	15	21	26	1	8	14	20	26		
A																	
C	2	10									2	9	15	21	27	On Leave, 17 May	2 July
E	3	11	18	23	28	2	9	16	22	27						On Command, 2 July	
G	4	12				3	10	17	23	28	3	10	16	22	28	Aid de Camp, 18 May	2 June
I	5	13	19	24	29	4	11				4	11	17	23	29	On Leave, 17 June	3 July
L	6	14				5	12	18			5	12	18	24	30	Recru. 19M. & 23 June	4 & 29 Jun.
N	7	15	20	25	30	6	13	19	24	29	6					On Leave, 11 July	
O	8	16	21	26	31	7	14	20	25	30	7	13	19	25	31		

Explanation, &c. of the Tables.

Winchester, April 30, 1777. Parole King GEORGE.

For guard to-morrow Captain *A*.

May 1. Parole Queen CHARLOTTE.

For guard to-morrow Captain *C*.

May 2. Parole Harvey.

For guard to-morrow Captain *E*. and so on daily till you come to Captain *C* again, who would then follow for guard; but having leave of absence is overlooked, by which means it brings on Captain *E* a day sooner than he otherwise would have been: in the like manner are the picquets or reserve guards to regulate their duties.

As to the table for courts-martial I am afraid that some refractory gentlemen (if any such are now in the army) will disapprove of this plan, as it possibly may happen that one Captain might set two or three times to another's once; however, as I apprehend it has its advantages by no officer knowing till the day or evening before they are ordered to set, and thereby prevent applications in order to bias their voice either for or against a prisoner, I cannot but give the preference to this.

In order to avoid repetitions, similar tables with those before recited are to be kept for the subalterns.

QUARTER-MASTER'S BOOK.

To contain returns of Cloathing, of Arms, Ammunition, and Forage, with the breadth and depth of ground necessary to be taken up for encamping a battalion of ten companies with Field-Pieces, as also the method of Huting.

Return

Of the Cloathing, &c.

UPON the arrival of the cloathing the quarter-master, or some other officer appointed for the purpose, is to inspect into them, and if he finds them in every particular article agreeable to the patterns sealed by the board of general officers, all the taylor's of the regiment are to be assembled at a place allotted, under the command of one, who is esteemed the best qualified to give the proper directions, and to see the orders duly complied with.

A centry must be posted on the place they work in, to prevent irregularities and to keep them to their stated hours : the quarter-master is frequently to visit them, in order to punish those who do not submit to the regulations, or behave refractory. The quarter-master's serjeant is constantly to attend them, except some other part of his duty should command his attendance.

When the regiment is to be new fitted the commanding officer is not to make any alteration therein, without further orders.

The new coats, waistcoats, and breeches are to be dipped in clean fresh water and laid in the sun to dry, then each man to be fitted with coat, waistcoat, and breeches ; the bottom of every man's coat to be six inches, except the men of the light infantry, which is to be nine inches from the ground when kneeling upon both knees, and hang of an equal length quite round : the waistcoats for the front and rear ranks of grenadiers to have twelve holes and buttons of each side ; center rank, and front and rear ranks of the battalion to have eleven holes and buttons ; center rank of the battalion ten.

All waistcoats must cover the foldier well, and to be made full in every part : they are to be cut square at the bottom, and to open back from the lowermost button-

hole to the point ; which lower button and hole are to cover the lower part of the waistband of the breeches : the back-seam of the waistcoat to be sewed down as low as the lower part of the waistband of the breeches, and to be strengthened at the bottom of the side-seam : the new breeches to be double sewed in all the seams, and made to sit easy, full and well : the escutcheon of the bottom of the side-seam of the coat to be well secured from ripping by a neat loop, and the opening of the back-skirt to be sewed down as low as the bottom of the second loop, and secured there from ripping by a neat loop ; the bottom of the lappels to be well stitched ; the shoulder-straps to be made high on the shoulder, and sewed down flat one inch, so that the remaining part, when unbuttoned, may fall along the arm ; and, when buttoned, to be of a sufficient length to contain the shoulder-belt with ease, and no longer : the skirts of the coats to be sewed together, and a piece of red cloth, near three inches long, and almost two in breadth, with a narrow square lace, put on at the corners, and a button in the center of the cloth ; one of these to be sewed to the point of each skirt.

A foraging cap and stopper to be made up, conformable to pattern ones, out of a part of the *old coat*, and the remainder to be made into breeches, according to the following directions : each man must be taken measure of, and care taken that the lining of the breeches is of strong new linen of about nine-pence per yard ; the breeches to be made full in the seat, to come well over the hips and low under the knee, with a strap for the buckle, and four buttons and button-holes on each side.

It is necessary that the non-commissioned officers and private men should be furnished with a pair of white ticken breeches of about two shillings and nine-pence per pair, to be made exactly as the breeches before recited, to wear in the summer time on marches, and if ordered to be

stationed in a warm climate, the coolness of them will be very acceptable.

Regulations of Prices fixed for Regimental Work done by the Tailors of the Regiment.

For a serjeant's coat altering	—	0	1	6
His waistcoat	—	0	0	5
His breeches	—	0	0	6
A drummer's or fifer's coat altering	—	0	1	2
His waistcoat	—	0	0	5
His breeches	—	0	0	6
A private man's coat altering	—	0	0	10
His waistcoat	—	0	0	5
His breeches	—	0	0	6
Making a serjeant's breeches intire	—	0	1	4
Ditto drummer, fifer, or private man's		0	0	9
Making a foraging cap	—	0	0	2
Ditto stopper	—	0	0	1
Making long gaiters	—	0	0	7
Ditto short	—	0	●	4½
Ditto white linen gaiter tops	—	0	0	2

No taylor to presume to purloin or steal any part of the cloth, nor are the waistcoats to be worked upon, till the coats and breeches are well finished and fitted to the foldier, and have been approved of by the officers commanding of companies.

A Return

Proportion of Ammunition for a Battalion of Nine Hundred Men, being the extra allowance for One Year, commencing the 29th of March 1760, agreeable to the King's Warrant.

	Powder Barrels.	Ball.	Flints.
		Musket Barrels.	Musket Barrels.
For { Service Exercife	13 $\frac{1}{2}$	35	2700
	19	11	1800
Total	32 $\frac{1}{2}$	46	4500

N. B. The proportion of ammunition for a battalion of foot is sixty-four rounds for each man, at six drachms each cartridge, and one hundred and thirty-five rounds each man for exercife, at one-fourth of an ounce.

Musket flints, three to each man for service and two for exercife. Musquet balls, twenty to each man.

Of Forage and the Ration.

A complete ration of forage, in Germany, confifts }	lb.
of Old Hay — — — — — }	14
Oats — — — — —	8
Straw — — — — —	6
A complete ration of forage, in Flanders, confifts }	
of Old Hay — — — — — }	12
Oats — — — — —	10
Straw — — — — —	6

When double rations of corn, in lieu of hay, were delivered, they were reckoned a complete ration.

Each time the army forages five or six rations are to be weighed in the presence of the Field-officer commanding the foragers; and if any are found to be short of weight,

or measure, the proportion of that deficiency is to be demanded upon the allowance, which each regiment is entitled to by regulation.

No more than one ration is to be given to a horse.

No more than sixteen sacks of corn must be put into any waggon.

Double rations of hay are to be reckoned as hay and corn.

One hundred rations of grafs or clover, weighing forty pounds, are allowed each regiment of foot *per diem*.

The Quarter-masters of regiments are to pick out five of the largest, and the country Commissaries five of the smallest bundles of hay or grafs, which are to be weighed together, and divided by ten; every bundle they receive afterwards is to be given as weighing the aforefaid tenth part.

Two hundred faggots are allowed for each battalion *per diem*; and every eight days, every battalion, including officers, servants, and bas-men, is also to receive four hundred bundles of straw; each bundle to weigh twelve pounds and an half.

Daily Allowance of Provision.

One pound of flour or biscuit; three quarters of a pound of fresh or salted beef, or half a pound of salted pork and half a pound of rice, the value of which, upon an average, cannot (in my humble opinion) exceed four-pence farthing.

American Weekly Allowance of Provisions for one Person.

Seven pounds of bread or flour.

Seven pounds of beef or pork.

Half a pound of rice.

Three pounds of peas; and

Six ounces of butter.

When

When they receive fresh meat, each person is to have one pound of beef a day, and one pound of flour; a bullock's head is to be issued for eight pounds; a tongue for three pounds; and a heart for its weight.

Proportion of Rations.

Brigadier-general	—	—	12
Colonel	—	—	6
Lieutenant-colonel	—	—	5
Major	—	—	4
Captain	—	—	3
Subaltern	—	—	2
Staff	—	—	2

Allowance of Straw and Firing in Ireland 1759, judged necessary for each Tent.

The first delivery of straw for each tent is to be six bundles, each bundle to weigh twenty pounds of wheat straw; two bundles of the like weight to be delivered to each tent every seven days afterwards during their encampment: where wood firing is made use of, twenty pounds weight is allowed to each tent a day, provided the wood has been some time cut; and every day, if green, forty pounds weight, adding one faggot of furze: if furze be made use of without wood, two faggots a day to each tent, provided each faggot weighs twenty pounds; but if the custom of the country is to make their faggots of sixteen pounds weight, two faggots and a half should be allowed each day. This computation is to shew that double the weight should be allowed where only furze is burnt.

If turf is made use of instead of wood or furze, forty-four turfs should be allowed to each tent a day.

Ten pounds is allowed for each bas-horse: funks and fods to be furnished out of the above allowance.

Bread

Breadth and Depth of Ground necessary to be taken up for encamping a Battalion of Ten Companies with Field-pieces.

The front, containing one hundred and seventy-five yards, is divided as follows:

	Yards.
For pitching	8 double rows of tents at five yards each — — — — — 40
	2 single rows at two yards and half each, for grenadier's company — 5
	Ditto for light infantry — — — 5
The breadth of	Grand street — — — — — 21
	8 lesser streets at thirteen yards each 104
Total Front 175	

Situation of the Battalion Guns.

	Yards.
From the side of the Serjeant's tent to the center of the	1st gun — — 4
	2d gun — — 6
Left of the next regiment — — — — — 20	
Interval — — — — — 30	
Front and interval — — — — — 200	

N. B. The muzzles of the battalion guns are in a line with the front of the Serjeants tents, except ordered otherwise.

The rearmost of the Gunners tents are in a line with the rear of the battalion tents.

The Subalterns of the artillery are in a line with the Subaltern of the battalion.

Six men will draw the light six pounder in the field, and they are commonly charged with a quarter of the shots weight.

Depth

Depth 320 Yards.

	Yards.
From the front pole of the officer's tent of quarter-guard to the center of the bells of arms of ditto	8
To the parade of quarter guard	4
To the first line of parade of battalion	50
To the center of the bells of arms	30
From the center of the bells of arms to front pole of Serjeant's tents	4
For pitching ten tents with their intervals at three yards each	30
From the rear of battalion's tents to the front of Subalterns	26
From front of Subalterns to front of Captains	24
From front of Captains to front of Field Officers	24
From front of Field Officers to front of Colonels	12
From front of Colonels to front of Staff Officers	16
From front of Staff Officers to front of 1 row of Bas-man's tents	18
From front of Bas-man's tents to front of 1st row pickets	2
From front of 1st row pickets to front of 2d row for horses	12
From front of 2d row for horses to front of 2d row Bas-man's tents	2
From front of 2d row Bas-man's tents to front of Grand Sutler	14
From front of Grand Sutler to front of Kitchens	20
From front of Kitchens to front of Center Petit Sutlers	5
From front of Center Petit Sutlers to front of Bells of arms	10
From front of Bells of arms to front of Center Of rear guard	15
<hr style="width: 100px; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> Total depth 320	

The front poles of the quarter-guard tents are in a line with the poles of the center company, and in a line with the center of their bells of arms.

The bells of arms front the poles of Serjeants tents.

The colours and espontoons are planted, and the drums placed in the center of the grand street in a line with the bells of arms.

Each

Each company pitches twenty tents, of ten in a row.

The Lieutenant-colonels and Majors tents front the center of the second streets from right and left of the battalion.

The Colonel's tent is in the line of the grand street fronting the colours.

The Staff officers front the center of the second street on the right and left of the grand street.

The Bas-man's tents front towards their horses; and the Grand Sutler's is in the rear of the Colonel's.

Inner diameter of the kitchens is sixteen feet, surrounded with a trench three feet broad, and the earth thrown inwards; the centers of the kitchens front the center of the streets of their company.

The front poles of the petit-futlers tents are in a line with the centers of the kitchens, allowing to each petit-futler six yards in front, and eight in depth, enclosed with a trench of a foot in breadth, and the earth thrown inwards.

The rear-guard front outwards; the front-poles are in a line with the center of their bells of arms, and each six yards distance.

The parade of the rear-guard is four yards from their bells of arms.

Common Dimensions of the Tent for a Captain or Subaltern; the Ornaments of which must be uniform, according to the Facing of the Corps.

	Ft.	Ins.
Length of the ridge pole — — — — —	7	0
Height of the standard pole — — — — —	8	0
Length from the front to rear of the marquée between half walls — — — — —	14	0
Breadth of the marquée between the half walls —	10	6
Height of the half walls of the marquée — —	4	0

“ If

“ If a battalion is to remain very late in the field, it is more than probable they will be ordered to hut, to do which the soldiers are to provide square hurdles large enough to cover a tent, when resting slope-ways against the upper edge of each other; they must be above a foot on every side longer than the tent, to leave sufficient room for striking: a piece of wicker-work is next to be fitted to the front, by way of a door, to move at pleasure; these hurdles and wickers being properly made and fixed, a thick coat of thatch (either straw, sedge, or rushes) is to be laid on them, well secured and bound; nothing can be warmer than one of these habitations, when the soldiers are in it, have drawn to the door, and pinned the tent quite close on every side. Huts dug into the earth, or built with fods, are at an advanced season of the year extremely damp, and of course unhealthy for the soldiers; the hurdle ones, on the contrary, are always dry, as the front can be entirely laid open in fair weather by removing the wicker door, and turning up the bottom of the tent in such a manner, that the air may have an interrupted passage round the inside of them.

“ The same necessity that obliges them to hut, towards the close of a late campaign, will require many other precautions to make the soldiers comfortable; and in particular during the time of cooking, when the inclemency of the weather often renders it almost impracticable in the open air; to obviate, therefore, the distress to which they must at that juncture be exposed, young trees should be collected, about the size and length of hop poles, and placed in a circular form round the outside of the kitchens, sloping upwards to a point exactly in the same position the poles are fixed after the hop-gathering is finished, leaving a sufficient opening on one side for the men to enter, and weaving small boughs or rushes through the poles; the kitchens being defended in this manner,
the

the foldiers remain no longer exposed to the inconveniencies of the weather; and are enabled, not only to dress their victuals without the smallest interruption, but by making a large fire in the center of the kitchen to enjoy themselves with great comfort and satisfaction, until they chuse, or it is proper to retire to their huts.

“ The officers also will, towards the conclusion of a late campaign, require aids to fortify them against the rigors of the season, which can readily be obtained, by ripping out a breadth from the walls of their *marquées* on either side the door, and building up a chimney of fods, with a proper funnel higher than the ridge-pole; a good fire with a pretty deep trench round the tent, to drain all moisture from the spot it covers, and a pair of stout weather-cords *, properly attended to, will enable them to stand the severities of any weather, in as comfortable a manner as can in such a situation be expected.”

P A Y - M A S T E R ' s B O O K .

To contain Forms of Abstracts and other matters for which he is accountable.

* By neglecting to slacken or tighten the weather and other cords of a tent, according to the dryness or dampness of the air, and likewise to watch the starting of the pins, in rainy weather, it either is exposed to frequent rents, or to be blown down.

Form

Form of an Abstract for each Company to be given by the Pay-master to the Commanding Officers of Companies every two Months.			
Lieutenant A. Ensign B. of	and	by	Days Subsistence for the Months , both Days inclusive.
C. D. Company.			£. s. d.
By what credited for	at £.	per Day	— — — — —
To stop Lieutenants subsistence	—	—	— — — — —
To ditto Sergeants E.	—	—	— — — — —
			Balance

<p>Form of an Abstract to be settled by the Pay-master and Agent of the Regiment every two Months.</p>	
<p>Abstract of the Non-effective and Recruiting Account, &c. from the 17 to both Days inclusive, for his Majesty's stationed at</p>	<p>Day of Regiment of Foot,</p>
<p>Dr. A. B. Account to 17 Cr.</p>	
<p>17 To</p>	<p>£. s. d.</p>
<p>By</p>	<p>£. s. d.</p>

Abstract of the Respite of each Company of his Majesty's to 17 from Regiment of Foot,	COMPANIES.		Amounting to £. s. d.																																
						Total in each Muster.																													
									Colonel.																										
												Lieutenant Colonel.																							
															Major.																				
																		Grenadiers.																	
																					Light Infantry.														
																								Captain.											
																											Captain.								
																														Captain.					
																																	Captain.		

K SURGEON'S

SURGEON'S BOOK.

To contain the Regulations and Treatment of the Sick of a regimental Infirmary, and Form of Return.

Of the Regulations and Treatment of the Sick of a Regimental Infirmary.

HUMANE officers feel a sensible regard and tenderness for their sick, and exert their endeavours in procuring them proper covering, diet, medicines, and due attendance; in which common humanity and the good œconomy of the corps are equally concerned.

The infirmary should be well founded, upon an ample provision, capable of relieving and administering relief and comfort to the distressed soldiers, and for that noble purpose, well provided with an able surgeon and mate, eminent for their skill in their profession, and also for their credit and tenderness, by which means the lives and limbs of brave men may be saved; and the commanding officer for that care and attention towards them be greatly endeared to his corps; and happy is that commandant, who through a fortunate mixture of judgment and goodness, can gain their esteem, confidence, and love.

An infirmary board is to set the first Monday in every month, composed of three captains, to regulate all matters thereunto belonging: To order a sufficient quantity of blankets, sheets, rugs, and bags, with other useful utensils, when any place for the sick are appointed and not provided with them. The bags are to be of the same size as those of a large feather bed and bolster, and the other articles in proportion: these bags are to be stuffed with straw, as occasion may require, and when the regiment marches they are to be emptied, and equally distributed among the companies to be carried by them.

The

The surgeon is to attend the board, to lay a state of his accounts, &c. before them, and as he allots the quantity of the food for the sick, he should take care of the quality, and that such species are wholesome and good ; that there is no purloining, and that each patient has every thing he is ordered. The surgeon is to appoint a head-nurse, and the greatest care must be taken, that she is sober, healthy, and experienced, and in every other respect duly qualified for the employment. An orderly man or more, if necessary, must daily attend from the companies in turn, to assist the sick ; the surgeons, surgeon's mate, serjeant and head-nurse. The surgeon is to make a report to the commanding officer, when any of the orders of regulations are not complied with ; and on every Saturday a report as follows :

When the battalion marches into cantonments or camp, the surgeon or quarter-master is to provide a house, where the infirmary for the sick are to be established, and should be as contiguous to them as possible; if a barrack is appointed for the quartering of them, a sufficient number of rooms must be made choice of for that purpose in the most remote part; and when the battalion is sent into more cantonments than two, and that the surgeon or his mate cannot attend more than them, the surgeon is to engage able surgeons or apothecaries in his place.

A serjeant is to attend the infirmary to regulate the œconomy of it; to preserve good order and cleanliness, to prevent the sick men from leaving their wards to trouble the kitchen, to keep an exact account of the pay of each ward, and see it properly expended according to the surgeons directions; give receipts for coals, candles, sheeting, &c. and close the accounts every half week, that any man who is to be discharged on _____ may have his overplus divided when he is dismissed. The serjeant to give an exact account of money disbursed, and the dividend for each man must be given every _____ morning to the surgeon, that the commanding officer may inspect it when he pleases; and the serjeant must give a distinct copy of that account to the serjeant who relieves him.

No sick soldier can have his wife employed as one of the nurses; and if any of the nurses husbands are taken ill, such nurse must be dismissed, or her pay discontinued till the recovery of her husband; but married men of good character, who live near the infirmary, and who have careful wives, if they are taken ill, may be allowed to remain in their lodgings, at the discretion of the surgeon.

When any man is taken ill of the small-pox, or any other pestilential disorder, he should immediately, upon the discovery of the disease, be sent to as private and re-

mote lodgings as can be had ; and all soldiers prevented from visiting him, lest the visitors catch such distempers, and communicate the infection. The sentry posted at an infirmary must suffer no one to enter, unless accompanied by a corporal or the people attending it. The sentry may be taken off every night at ten (except any thing extraordinary requires his being continued) and planted again at day-break. Any of the men, who have slight complaints, may attend the surgeon at a place appointed, in the morning, when the corporals are to give in their reports of the sick.

A serjeant or corporal of the companies, who have any sick in the regimental infirmary, are to carry their linen every and on which last day they must also bring their subsistence, and pay it to the serjeant attending the infirmary ; and visit their sick twice a week, to know what linen they want ; and they must bring nothing to any patient but wearing apparel, without the surgeon's or mate's permission.

If any serjeant or corporal is a patient in the infirmary, he must be aiding and assisting in keeping order and decency among them, and in detecting any mean practices committed there ; for if any serjeant or corporal connives at any thing improper to be brought in, or does not discover it to the surgeon, he will be reduced for it : and if any soldier, while a patient in the infirmary, does not quietly submit to the rules of the house, he will be confined to the black hole, as soon as cured, for 48 hours : if notoriously refractory, he should be tried by a court martial : if a patient should break out from thence, he shall when recovered be sent to the black hole for ten days.

When any non-commissioned officer or soldier's sickness renders them unsafe to be moved when the battalion marches, they must be put under the care of a surgeon or apothecary, and a non-commissioned officer and private

map

man (if necessary) to be left with them : when the men are sufficiently recovered to perform a march, the non-commissioned officer is to signify the same by letter to the commanding officer, in order that a route may be had and sent to bring them to their corps, and the bedding, utensils, &c. left for their use to be packed up and conveyed to the regiment by the most convenient and cheap way ; and when any men on the long march are taken so ill as not to be able to go any further without the greatest danger, they must be left at their billet ; and to prevent the landlord making his situation disagreeable, a field officer, or the commanding officer of whose company the sick men belong to, should make an application to the head-magistrate to confirm their billet during his sickness, and to prevent their being ill treated ; a sober, careful, honest man must be left with sufficient subsistence, and a surgeon or apothecary engaged to attend them.

A corporal of a company must attend every morning at the infirmary to receive the recovered men, and every man discharged should be duty free for seven days and more if the surgeon directs.

Orderly corporals neglecting to give in their morning reports must be brought to a court martial, and the surgeon should have a power of confining them.

FORM OF REPORT.			
Report of the Sick and Lame in morning		Company	
Lame in quarters A. B. serjeant, John-street	—		1
Ditto in barracks C. D. corporal, No. 8.	—		1
Sick in infirmary E. F. private	—	—	1
To the Surgeon.	Total	-	3
	G. H. Corporal.		

When a man is sent to the infirmary, the corporal of the squad he belongs to must give to the serjeant in waiting there, a return of such arms, accoutrements, and necessaries as he brings, taking a receipt for the same ; when such man dies, or is discharged, the corporal who delivered them should receive them again, and compare them with the return he gave in ; and if upon examination he finds a deficiency, he is to report the same to the officer commanding his company, in order that the serjeant may be dealt with accordingly.

The corporal of the sick men's squad is to go to the infirmary to clean the sick men's arms and accoutrements once a week, and for which the sick man is to allow him two-pence each time.

REGU.

REGULATIONS OF DIET FOR THE INFIRMARY.

Day of the week.	Meals.	FULL DIET.	HALF DIET.
Sunday and Thursday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A pint of water-gruel. Eight ounces of boiled beef. One pint of broth.	A pint of water-gruel. Four ounces of beef, and a pint of broth. A pint of broth.
Tuesday and Saturday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A pint of water-gruel. Eight ounces of boiled mutton. A pint of broth.	A pint of water-gruel. Four ounces of mutton, and a pint of broth. A pint of broth.
Monday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A pint of water-gruel. A pint of rice milk. Two ounces of cheese, or one of butter.	A pint of water-gruel. A pint of rice milk. A pint of water-gruel.
Wednesday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A pint of water-gruel. Twelve ounces of pudding. Two ounces of cheese, or one of butter.	A pint of water-gruel. Six ounces of pudding. A pint of water-gruel.
Friday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A pint of water-gruel. A pint of barley-gruel. Two ounces of cheese, or one of butter.	A pint of water-gruel. A pint of barley-gruel. A pint of water-gruel.

N. B. The men on full diet have a pound of bread and a pint of small beer every day.
The men on half diet have half a pound of bread and a pint of small beer every day.

To this I must beg leave to add, a custom established amongst the Romans, by means of which they prevented the diseases and mortality that armies are subject to from change of climates; and to which also a part of that amazing success which attended them ought to be attributed. "The German armies lost above a third upon their arrival in Italy and Hungary. In the year 1718, we entered the camp of Belgrade with 55,000 men: it stands upon an eminence; the air is wholesome; the water good, and we had plenty of all necessaries; nevertheless, on the day of the battle, which was on the 18th of August, we could muster only 22,000, under arms; the rest being either dead, or incapable of acting.—I could produce many instances of this kind, which have happened amongst other nations, and be only imputed to the change of climate. The use of vinegar was the grand secret, by which the Romans preserved their armies; for as soon as that was wanting amongst them, they became as much subject to diseases as we were at present. This is a fact that perhaps few have attended to, but which is notwithstanding of very great importance to all commanders, who have a regard for their troops, and any ambition to conquer their enemies. In regard to the manner of using it; the Romans distributed it by order amongst the men, every one receiving a sufficient quantity to serve him for several days, and pouring a few drops into water, which he drunk. To trace the cause of so salutary an effect is what I leave to the adepts in physic, contenting myself with having related a simple fact, the reality of which is unquestionable." Marshal Saxe served this campaign as a volunteer.

The books are all to be folio, the Companies Book excepted, and a box is to be provided to contain the folios, and carried at the regiments expences and are always to be kept at head quarters,

A M I L I T A R Y

MILITARY COURSE,

THIRD PART,

Of Discipline.

DISCIPLINE, in a battalion, is known to be as conducive to victory and enterprizes, as the due execution of the civil laws is to the security of the rights and properties of the subject.

Authority and obedience in both are absolutely requisite, without which neither the battalion nor government could answer the end proposed for the institution, nor even subsist.

Discipline chiefly consists in all orders given by superiors, and in their due execution from the commander to the common soldier: it is a mistaken opinion that subordination and passive obedience to superiors, is any debasement of a soldier's courage; so far from it, that those battalions which have been subject to the severest discipline, have always performed the greatest manœuvres, marches, and victories: therefore nothing can be so essential to the soldier as discipline, without it corps may become more dangerous than serviceable, and more dreadful to ourselves than our enemies.

Discipline

Discipline is a subject of the utmost importance, and requires not only great abilities, but much information, attended with close application, being difficult from the extensive field of operations; and without an exact discipline, factions and animosities will arise which are quite repugnant to subordination, and prejudicial to the service and the particular good of the corps.

Discipline has often rendered a handful of soldiers victorious over a body of men many times their number; it was by this the petty states of Greece maintained themselves independent, when attacked by numbers vastly their superiors, and to the exactness of discipline the Romans owed their conquests of the world: but in proportion as that declined their power decreased, and those whom they had beaten with such small numbers, became, by their shameful neglect of discipline, conquerors in their turn.

Every nation is so sensible of the absolute necessity of discipline, that for some years past, they have had their utmost attention to improve it to the highest degree.

The British have not been negligent in this respect, of whom it may be said, to the honor of our officers, that our troops are as expert at their arms, manœuvres, and every branch of the military as to be second to none.

Of Recruiting, with Observations,

AS this duty is attended with many disagreeable circumstances to the officer employed on it; he should seriously draw up the whole prospect of gain in case success should crown his wishes, and that of loss in case it ends in desertion or miscarriage: he should weigh his hopes and his fears; the hazard of losing with the probability of gaining, and never embark uncautiously, though success perchance should follow his standard.

1. When

1. When a recruiting party arrives in a town or gar-
rison where it intends to beat up, or quarter for a night
or more, the officer commanding is to be informed of
that intention, as also the chief magistrate.

2. A recruiting party should always appear remarkably
clean, and very neat and smart in their dress, hats well
cocked and worn in a soldier like manner; for expe-
rience proves that nothing contributes more to engage
the attention of the country people; and that a regular
good conduct and never engaging in quarrels is the sure
path to cultivate a friendship among them and ensure
success.

3. If any one of the party is guilty of any crime de-
serving of punishment, or appears slovenly or dirty, such
men must immediately be reported to the Commanding
Officer of the regiment, in order that one may be sent
to replace him, and he to be dealt with accordingly.

4. No man to be enlisted who is not a protestant and
a native of Great Britain or Ireland, for if a foreigner
through mistake should happen to be approved of, and
within three months after joining the regiment shall
be discovered to be so, they will be discharged at the
officer's loss, provided it can be made appear that he, or
any one of the party, had cause to suspect him.

5. Young lads under seventeen, nor men above twenty-
five are to be enlisted, unless the latter has served in the
army; in which case he will be accepted of, provided
his age does not exceed thirty-two years, and he can
produce a good discharge; for no man will be ap-
proved of who has been whipped or drummed out of
a corps, or that has incurred the censure of the civil
law: if any such are found within three months after
joining the regiment, they will be discharged at the
officer's loss.

6. No

6. No man must be enlisted under five feet five inches high without shoes, or who has not straight limbs, broad shoulders, a good face, and every way well made; neither must they enlist any man who cannot wear his hair, who is thin, in-kneed, splay-footed, or has the least defect in his knees: strollers, vagabonds, tinkers, chimney-sweepers, colliers, or sailors are never to be entertained; but to endeavour to get men bred and born in the neighbourhood of the county they are recruiting in.

In particular, care must be taken that all recruits are examined by a known surgeon or apothecary of established reputation, for a man who is troubled with fits, or has any appearance of a rupture, broken bones, sore legs, scald head, ulcers or running sores on any part of his body, old wounds ill cured, or any infirmity in body or limb, will not be approved of, but will be discharged at the loss of the officer, if discovered within three months after joining the regiment; or should it be discovered that any of the party knew that any of the recruits was afflicted as above, he or they should be brought to a court-martial and punished accordingly.

8. The recruits must be duly attested before a magistrate, a receipt taken on the back of their attestations, and witnessed for the full bounty money agreed upon: the attestations of the enlisted men are to be sent by the non-commissioned officer who conducts the recruits to quarters.

9. When a recruit is once attested, the officer cannot dismiss him, unless he is claimed as a militia man, a deserter, or an apprentice*, *in due form or upon oath*, and

* Lord Camden's opinion (when Attorney General) of apprentices enlisting for soldiers.

Query 1. As it often happens, that apprentices enlist in the army, whether they can be detained from their masters?

and then the recruiting officer is not impowered to sign a discharge; all he can do is to let them have the man till one is sent from the Commanding officer of the regiment.

10. The recruits are to furnish themselves, out of their bounty-money, with knapsack, linen, shoes, stockings, &c. and a return of their necessaries must be sent with them to the regiment, signed by the officer, as also a return of their name, age, size, county, &c. agreeable to the one in page 117, and all subsistence given to the recruits before they join their regiment shall be charged separately from the levy-money.

Answer. I am of opinion they cannot, for an apprentice is not *sui Juris*, or capable of contracting against his indenture; so that, whether he contracts with a private person, or with the crown, as a volunteer, his contract, in both cases, is void, and the apprentice must be delivered up if he is re-claimed by his master.

Query 2. Whether the law requires, that upon being re-claimed by their masters, they should be absolutely discharged from the service, or only that they should have a temporary furlough, or leave of absence, for the time of their apprenticeship?

Answer. I think the apprentice must be absolutely discharged, because the enlisting is void, by reason of the inability in the apprentice to enlist at all; provided always, that he is demanded by his master; for if he gives him up, I think the enlisting good.

Query 3. Whether persons, who have been enlisted while apprentices, and dismissed with such a furlough or leave of absence, can be proceeded against as deserters, if upon proper notice they do not repair to their regiment, troop, or company, when their indentures are expired?

Answer. The answer to the last *Query*, will do for this likewise; when the apprentice is once dismissed, upon the master's claim, he is discharged for ever.

C. PRATT, Attorney-General.

11. The

11. The non-effective fund shall be charged with the real expence of all recruits who may die before they join their regiment, provided the day of their death, and exact bounty-money given them, be certified on the back of the attestation; and when the recruiting officer sends any recruits to the regiment, he must give notice of it by letter to the agent, enclosing a state of his account.

12. When directions are given to enlist boys for Drummers or Fifers, they are to be inserted in the attestations; when the commanding officer of the regiment shall judge proper, they shall be put in the ranks and serve as private, without being entitled to any further bounty-money.

13. No allowance is ever to be made the party † on pretence of expences incurred by endeavouring to get men, as such a practice encouraged would be endless; but for every man enlisted and approved of at the regiment five shillings, as also the penalty of twenty shillings paid for those who hastily enlist: these sums to be divided in shares among the party, but not to be paid till they join their regiments, in order to clear off any debts they may have contracted, and to furnish fresh necessaries.

Remarks upon Recruiting.

“When men are raised by compact, it is unjust not to observe it, as they were free at the time of contracting; it is contrary to all laws, both divine and human, not to perform the promises made them; nor is the service benefitted by such unjustifiable proceedings, for the consequence will be, that the men will desert, and they cannot

† Except the crown to drink his Majesty's health.

justly

justly be punished for it, because the faith pledged to them has been violated."

The custom of recruiting by those gentry that reside in and about London, by raising recruits by artifice, is altogether infamous, and calls aloud for redress; for instance, secretly and unjustly conveying money into mens pockets by art or when drunk, and then challenging them for their men; the consequences attending such unlawful proceedings are *desertion* and *mutinous* behaviour; would it not then be better to establish a law, obliging all men of all conditions in life to serve for the space of five or seven years? such a law could not reasonably be objected against, as it is both natural and reasonable for people to be employed in the defence of that state of which they constitute a part: in chusing them between the years of seventeen and twenty-five, no manner of inconvenience can possibly arise; for those years are (too often) devoted to libertinism, in which youth go in quest of adventures and rambles, and which afford no comfort to aged parents: but if this is disapproved of, I shall humbly offer another, to facilitate that most essential service.

Men to enlist for seven, eight, or ten years, at the expiration of which they should either be permitted to receive another bounty and enter into a similar engagement, or claim a discharge: from this motive, I confess, many may be induced to enlist; another bounty, with the common attachment to their corps, may impel them to engage again; and their respect for those banners under which they have been victorious, with the expectation of a pension, may incline them to voluntary service. But to this I must object, first, that those who quit would be disciplined soldiers, whose vacancies must be replaced with recruits: secondly, that evil and designing men would be enabled to work upon credulity,

L

and

and occasion the men to leave their corps at such critical junctures as might be attended with pernicious consequences.—I therefore would form regiments into brigades, and call each by the name of a county in Great Britain, wherein the men who compose it were natives. This points out many advantages to the service, particularly these; viz. the shires would probably contend who soonest and best could complete the brigades of its name; they would more resolutely combine to protect their native country; as they would be piqued in honour to deliver up the offenders to justice, desertions would seldom occur; and lastly, by this scheme, so strong an emulation would be raised between (for instance) the Yorkshire, Nottinghamshire, and Cumberland brigades, that each would sooner suffer itself to be destroyed, than yield a laurel to its neighbour.

Of Messing and the Advantages attending it, &c.

The Custom of Messing contributes much to good order and œconomy; debauchery, gaming, and drunkenness are thereby prevented, and the soldier comfortably and well maintained.

By want of health and the attacks of disease complete battalions have been reduced to a mere nothing: and if the operations of war are checked by sickness, the instructing soldiers how to live, will then be as necessary, as to teach them how to fight.

Method is allowed to be useful and necessary in all sciences; but in my opinion, no where so much as in the government and conduct of messing, therefore it cannot be too soon put in practice, lest by neglecting this main constituent principle of all regularity, the battalion at first forming may fall into sickness; get careless, idle habits, the reforming of which might afterwards prove matter of difficulty.

After

After subordination, nothing is more essentially necessary than a regular well-chosen food, and obliging the men to boil their pots at one particular hour: the companies, whether paid daily or otherwise (which depends upon circumstances,) the pay-master serjeants of each company, after making the proper stoppages, are to give the remaining subsistence for each man, with a written account, to the non-commissioned officers commanding squads*, in order to purchase provision, and for a due performance of the trust reposed in them, one man from each mess attends to see the money properly laid out.

Encouragement ought to be given to all country people to bring provisions to the market. And the non-commissioned officers who go to market with the men, are to prevent them quarrelling with the country people, or others, upon any occasion whatever. If the price of provisions is exorbitant, application must be made to the chief Magistrate, who will regulate it. If a soldier is guilty of any insolence, or uses any harsh words, to any person whatever, he shall upon proof thereof be punished, according to the nature of the offence, by a court-martial.

* See Form of Squad Rolls, Page 110.

Officers Scheme for Mefs for Dinner and Supper, in Camp.

N ^o of Officers.	Rank.	Each per Day.		per Day.		E S T I M A T E.				
		s.	d.	£.	s.	d.	£.	s.	d.	
1	Colonel - - -	3	0	0	3	0	21	0	0	
1	Lieut. Colonel -	2	6	0	2	6	10	0	0	
1	Major - - -	2	0	0	2	0	23	3	0	
7	Captains - - -	1	6	0	10	6	14	0	8	
11	Lieutenants - -	1	0	0	11	0				
9	Ensigns - - -	0	9	0	6	9	Total	68	3	8
1	Chaplain - - -	1	3	0	1	3	Field Officers and Captains, six Guineas each	63	0	0
1	Surgeon - - -	1	0	0	1	0	Eleven Lieutenants, at 4s. 8d. each	2	11	4
1	Adjutant - - -	1	0	0	1	0	Nine Ensigns, at 3s. 8d. each	1	13	0
1	Quarter Master.	1	0	0	1	0	One Chaplain, at 6s. 8d.	0	6	8
		Total		2	0	0	One Surgeon, at 4s.	0	4	0
							One Adjutant, at 4s.	0	4	0
							One Quarter Master, at 4s. 8d.	0	4	8
34	N. B. The Captain Lieutenant is included in the Lieutenants.						Total	68	3	8

By this scheme each Field Officer and Captain is to contribute six guineas, and each Subaltern and Staff Officer one day's pay each, towards the purchasing of a dining tent, kitchen tent, and also to enable a futler to buy a cart and two horses, table linen, kitchen furniture, &c. Wine, punch, ale, cyder, &c. being distinct articles, must be paid for by those only who chuse to call for them; and for each stranger's dinner, one shilling is to be paid by the inviter.

No gentleman can have his dinner sent him from the mess, except in case of sickness, duty, or when under an arrest.

If this be disapproved of, upon a supposition that the futler will be too great a gainer, a bill of his expences may be delivered by him, to any Officer accepting that trouble, who, with the consent of the rest, may appropriate the surplus to whatever purpose is most agreeable to the mess.

And if the futler be a loser, such sum must be made good by the mess in general, as well as a gratuity to him for his trouble.

Of Desertion, &c.

A foldier that deserts his colours, after having been duly sworn and heard the articles of war against mutiny and desertion read, does not deserve to live.

It is a false notion of lenity to try such offenders by any other court martial, than a general; or by any other crime than that for desertion, as they will be ever considered as a violator of their sacred promise, and never after to be depended upon.

Discipline is so essential to a battalion, and punishments so necessary towards its support, that for the crime of *desertion*—Death—without any alternative; as intelligence given to an enemy is of the greatest advantage and may ruin the best consulted plan.

advancement, desert their colours and join the opposite party ; but those never fail, though they are at first encouraged, of meeting a reward equal to their dishonor ; for those to whom they desert cannot confide in them ; lest they should act by them, as by their former masters : if at any time they are taken prisoners, they are sure to meet with the reward due to their demerit ; therefore of how weak and unthinking a disposition must that man be, who has once enlisted to serve his King and Country, if he deserts ; for whether in peace or war his good conduct may afford him the sweets of this world, and even his enemy will esteem him for his loyalty ; when on the contrary, his weakness throws him not only into the hazard of life, but he is even disregarded and treated as a vagabond by those to whom he deserted : though it is certain the best officers always encourage them, as it is the sure means to diminish the enemy's force. But let no deserter ever suppose the intent is to serve him ; which circumstances, if they were well considered by the soldiery, would cement the battalion in firmness, under the greatest hardships, and most obstinate engagements.

Attorney General's Opinion concerning Soldiers making away with their Cloaths or Necessaries.

CAPTAIN A. B. of the _____ regiment, represents, in a letter of the _____ of June, from _____ that he has had several hearings before the civil magistrates, with the inhabitants, for buying and taking in pledge from the foldiers, their shirts, shoes, and stockings, particularly in regard to one _____ of Captain _____ company, who sold four shirts, two pair of stockings, and a pair of shoes, leaving himself destitute of linen, &c. &c.

By the objections made by the attorney in behalf of the defendant, neither the expected penalty nor punishment is

£ 4

inflicted,

inflicted, pursuant to the forty-fifth clause in the Mutiny and Desertion Bill, which enacts, " That if any person shall knowingly detain, buy, or exchange, or otherwise receive arms, cloaths, caps, or any other furniture belonging to the King, from any soldier or deserter, upon any account or pretence whatever, or cause the colour of such cloaths to be changed, the person so offending shall forfeit for every such offence the sum of five pounds, and, upon conviction of the oath of one or more credible witnesses before any of his Majesty's Justices of the Peace, the penalty of five pounds be levied by warrant, under the hand of the said Justice or Justices of the Peace, by distress and sale of the goods and chattels of the offender.

O B J E C T I O N S.

The attorney in behalf of the defendant will not admit the soldier who sells his linen, necessaries, or cloathing, &c. to be an evidence against the person who buys or receives them; neither will the attorney allow what a soldier is provided with to belong to the King, except his red cloaths and hat; alledging, that shoes, linen, and stockings are the soldier's property, being bought out of his pay, so that he may do with them what he pleases.

A N S W E R.

Every soldier is provided with a complete cloathing; the fund whereof arising from his pay, in which is included his cloaths, hat, shirts, shoes, and stockings; (the three last species come within the denomination of small cloathing); but these being of a more perishable kind, the soldier is to be provided with them from time to time, as necessity may require; and, for that end, there is a deduction of six-pence out of his pay, pursuant to the fourteenth clause in the Mutiny Act,

Q U E R I E S

Q U E R I E S.

Whether the foldier who fells, may not be admitted an evidence againſt the perſon who buys his cloathing, linen, &c. ?

Whether linen, ſhoes, and ſtockings are not as much a part of his cloathing, and belonging to the King, as the cloaths and hat ; the whole being bought out of the foldier's pay ?

As there is a criminal proſecution, I am of opinion, that the foldier may be a witneſs againſt the perſon who buys and fells his cloathing : the linen, ſhoes, and ſtockings are, I conceive, within the intent of the recited claufe ; the detaining, buying, or exchanging them knowingly is an offence puniſhable in the manner therein directed.

D. R I D E R.

Of Courts-martial, Punishments, &c.

COURTS-martial were inſtituted by the legiſlature, to reſtore order and tranquillity, to protect the innocent, and to reſtrain the exceſſes of the turbulent and guilty, to check all arbitrary proceedings that are contrary to good order and military diſcipline ; and alſo to examine into the conduct of officers and foldiers to paſs ſentence upon thoſe who ſhall be found guilty of a breach of the articles of war, or by their judgments remove any bad impreſſions, or miſrepresentations that may be made to their prejudice.

“ The firſt thing neceſſary to the trial of an offender who is either principal or acceſſary, is his being arraigned *.

“ Exceptions,

* Arraignment means the calling the offender to the bar of the court to anſwer the matter he is charged with, and in doing which the Law directs (indeed common compaſſion points it out to us) that every perſon ought to be uſed with humanity and gentleneſs, which is conſiſtent with the nature of the thing, and under no ter-

ror

“ Exceptions to the competency of the witness, which excludes him from giving his testimony, there are many, among which are some which I shall mention, and of these exceptions the court are to be the judge.”

“ A conviction of treason, felony, piracy, premunire, perjury, or forgery; also a judgment in attain for giving a false verdict, or in conspiracy at the suit of the king, and also a judgment for any crime whatsoever to stand in the pillory, or to be whipped or branded, being in a court which had jurisdiction, are good causes of exceptions against a witness, while they continue in force; but no such conviction or judgment can be made use of, unless the record be actually produced in court; and it is a general rule that a witness shall not be asked any questions, the answering of which might oblige him to accuse himself of a crime, and that his credit is to be impeached only by general accounts of his character and reputation, and not by proofs of particular crimes, of which he never was convicted.”

“ Out-lawry, in a personal action, is not a good exception against a witness, and a person convicted of felony who is admitted to his clergy and burnt in the hand, is hereby re-enabled to be a witness.”

“ The King’s pardon of treason or felony after conviction or attainder restores the party to his credit;” and lord chief justice Holt is of opinion that the King’s pardon will remove a disability to be a witness in all cases

ror or uneasiness than what proceeds from a sense of his guilt, and the misfortune of his present unhappy circumstances, and therefore ought not to be brought to the bar in a contumelious manner, though charged with the highest crimes; as with his hands tied together, or any other mark of ignominy and reproach, nor even with fetters on his feet, unless there be danger of an escape or rescue,

whatsoever,

whatsoever, wherein it is only the consequence of the conviction or judgment against him, and not an express part of the judgment, as it is in conspiracy at the suit of the King; "and Sir Matthew Hale thinks that one convicted of conspiracy, perjury, or forgery, may be a good witness if pardoned."

"It is allowed to be a good exception, that the witness believes neither the New or Old Testament to be the word of God, on one of which your law requires that the oath should be administered: but a Mahometan sworn on the Koran, has been admitted as an evidence; for if a murder or other crime is committed in presence of only a Turk, that owns not the Christian religion, it would be very hard that the criminal goes unpunished, because such an oath must not be taken, but the credit of such a testimony must be left to the jurors."

"As whether an accomplice in the crime charged against the prisoner may be a witness against or for him, it has been long settled, that it is no exception against a witness that he hath confessed himself guilty of the same crime, if he hath not been indicted for it; for if no accomplices were to be admitted as witnesses, it would generally be impossible to find evidence to convict the greatest offenders, and it hath often been ruled, that accomplices who are indicted, are evidences for the King until they are convicted:" some are disabled from being witnesses in regard to defect of intellectuals; a person of non sane memory cannot be a witness while he is under that insanity, but if he has lucida intervalla (lucid intervals) then during the time he hath understanding he may be a witness."

A member of a court-martial cannot be a witness for or against the prisoner, except called upon for his character.

"No

“ No witness in a court of law is allowed to read any evidence he may have prepared in writing ; but may recur to those notes to refresh his memory.

“ Evidences in giving their testimonies must relate the very fact that the prisoner did, or the very words that he made use of ; for it is no evidence in any criminal case, that the defendant did so, or said so, or words to the like effect, because the court must know the very acts or words to judge of their force and effect.

“ If a witness be produced for the King, yet if that witness alledge any matter in his evidence, that stands as a testimony upon oath for the prisoner as well as the King.”

Court-martials cannot be too exact and circumstantial in their inquiries to arrive at truth ; and that the nature of the offence is equal to the punishment allotted ; for a judge that is prepossessed in any cause, and does not hear both sides indifferently, though the judgment he gives be right, yet he errs, for there can be no integrity, where there is any partiality.

“ Great punishments are only to be inflicted for great offences ; but the more moderate they are in general, the more easy it will be to reform abuses ; because all the world concurring in the necessity of them will cheerfully promote their effect.

Most nations punish marauders with certain death, so that a man is frequently hanged or shot for that offence only ; in consequence of which they are very seldom taken, because every person is unwilling to be the cause of the death of a poor fellow, whose belly perhaps was craving for hunger.

If instead of death, we sent them to the black hole or provosts, hand-cuffed and to lay upon straw, and subsist upon bread and water only for one or two months, or to be employed upon some of the public works in
camp

camp or garrison when off duty, then all good subjects would join their endeavours to bring such offenders to punishment, and then the several guards and out-posts would be more alert in order to their being apprehended.

In England, where the subject is blest with a higher liberty than in Prussia, crimes not capital are suppressed or kept under by milder punishments, and justice as well in the army as in the rest of the community: drunkenness in the English army is suppressed by confinement in the black hole, &c. * except when on guard, party, or other duty under arms, when whipping is the punishment sentenced the common man, and cashiering the officer: but where crimes (the consequence of drunkenness) are capital, the civil law is at hand to take cognizance of such criminals.

* A place provided free from damp, made as dark and dismal as possible, where clean dry straw is put every week to prevent the increase of vermin; and in winter-time a blanket is allowed to each man: soldiers for small offences are sent to this hole instead of being brought to a court-martial, and are only allowed a three-penny loaf for every twenty-four hours, with as much water as they can drink: once a day (if the weather permits) they are taken out of confinement and escorted by a guard for about half an hour to take the air, whilst the place is kept open and cleaned; when real necessity demands their going to a certain place, the centry posted over them is to call to the guard to send two careful men to go with the prisoner, who are to be answerable (as well as the centry) for their not getting any food or drink but of their own allowance.

N. B. Each prisoner is stopt out of his pay, beside for the bread, three farthings per day for straw and watch coats.

MILITARY COURSE.

FOURTH PART.

Of Saluting.

THE officers salute is frequently altered through the whim of the Field-officer commanding the battalion, and as I apprehend it not to be of the greatest importance, I shall leave it out; beside, as that excellent officer Lord Townsend has in a work intituled "The Norfolk Militia," not only given the exercise of the officers salute and the manner of performing it, but even the figures represented in their several motions; therefore was I to presume to say any thing upon this subject, it might with great justice be deemed impertinence in me.

Of the Drill, &c.

I shall now proceed to give some directions with respect to the drill.

That Drill Serjeants and Corporals do give their instructions in an easy, intelligent manner, as they must expect to find many young lads, awkward, careless, lazy, and want of memory; these certainly are very disagreeable

able circumstances to those employed to teach them, and must often ruffle their tempers; but the only way to reconcile these difficulties with affection, is to be cool and patient; to instruct them in an obliging good-natured manner, at the same time they must encourage an opinion of respect and obedience, which every recruit must be instructed to have for their officers.

The first thing necessary to be taught them is to give them the air and dress of a soldier, in order to drive out the clown, to set them well upon their limbs, &c. agreeable to the position of a soldier under arms, page 180.

Secondly, they are to be taught the military step, in order to give them a free and easy carriage, which can only be acquired by practice of marching quick or slow in regular order: it is of consequence in the march, or in the line, that they keep their ranks well dressed; for men who march in an irregular manner, are in disorder, and if fallen upon by an enemy, must be defeated.

Nothing is more essential, for a man may be attacked in four parts: in front, in the rear, and on both flanks, but he can defend himself and annoy the enemy only when his face is towards them.

Marching is reduced to three points; front and both flanks (because it is impossible to do it regular for any time backwards) and by this means you face the enemy whenever it presents itself: the different steps to be taught them are three; slow, fast, and oblique, which may be termed traversing.

The next consideration is to give them arms and accoutrements, the manner of wearing the latter and carrying the former, as also how to fix their flints to procure the most fire (where fire is certain it generally kills) that they take good aim, and properly adjust their ball.

Shouldered,

Shouldered, which is the first position of the soldier under arms, ought to be minutely attended to, it being the most graceful and from which all other motions are to be performed.

They must be taught the different faceings and wheelings by ranks, files, and companies till they are thoroughly grounded in them; then the manual and platoon exercise, firing single at the target, and then by files, and the different sounds and signals of the drum:

As it is necessary that recruits should be instructed to know the sounds and beatings of the drum before they are dismissed from the drill; as, whether it be the general, assemble, march, reveille, troop, retreat, tat-too, to arms, parley, chamade, &c. as they are thereby taught to march and perform their exercise, manœuvres, &c. It is also very proper to teach them every other sound and signal.

To beat the general, is an order for the whole to make ready to march; the assembles to repair to their colours; and the march commands them to move; the reveille, at day-break, warns the soldiers to rise, and the sentries to cease challenging; the troop assembles them together, to call over the roll and inspect the men for duty; the retreat is beat at sun-set for calling over the roll again, to warn the men for duty and read the orders of the day; the tat-too beats at ten every night in summer, and nine in winter; the soldiers must then repair to their quarters or barracks, when the Non-commissioned officers of each squad call over their rolls, and every man must remain there till reveille-beating next morning; a beat to arms is to advertise them to stand to their arms, or to repair to their alarm-posts; and a parley, or chamade, is to desire a conference with the enemy.

SIGNALS.

SIGNALS.

Turn or face to the right	One single stroke and flam.
Turn or face to the left	Two single strokes and flam.
To the right about	Three single strokes and flam.
To the left about	Four single strokes and flam.
To wheel to the right	} Roll, one } } Roll, two } single strokes } Roll, three } and flam. } Roll, four }
To wheel to the left	
To wheel to the right abt.	
To wheel to the left about	
To front	Strong double flam.
To make ready	Preparative.
To cease firing	General.
To march	March.
Quick pace	Quick march.
To charge bayonets	Point of war.
To form battalion	To arms.
To ease	} your arms } Tow-row-dow. } First part of the tat-too. } Last part of ditto.
To secure	
To shoulder	
To call the Adjutant	First part of the troop.
To call a Serjeant and Corporal of each com- pany	} Three rolls, six flams.
To call all the Serjeants and Corporals	
To assemble the pioneers	Pioneer's march.
To assemble the drummers and fifers	} Drummer's call.

After being well instructed in every particular of the before recited; powder is first to be given to the recruits, and they are to be practised how to load and fire singly; then by files and divisions; then with ball at the target till they can hit the object six times out of twelve, for "without firing at a mark, men will not be marksmen; and, without being sure to kill, soldiers are not in the best possible state of war."

M

of

Of FIRING S.

Of presenting standing.

THE position of kneeling is by no means necessary for men that are only three deep; it is needless to prove that the fire is thereby slackened, and the arms injured.

Let the first rank incline to the right, by carrying the right foot square behind the left heel and presenting.

The second rank make a half turn to the right at the same time that it presents.

The third rank is to move the left heel before the point of the right foot, shifting this foot at same time to the right, in order to present between the two files, the body leaning forward.

Three Vollies in the Air.

The ranks are to stand at half distance and make ready as center rank; *Preparative*; *Make ready*; *Present*, they present in the air; *Fire*, they fire, come to the priming posture and proceed to load and shoulder: *Preparative*; *Make ready*; *Present*; *Fire*, go on as before; *Preparative*; *Make ready*; *Present*; *Fire*, they fire and recover; *Flam*, they half cock; *Flam*, they shoulder; *Flam*, they shut pans; after this they are to give three huzzas, first, taking off their hats with two motions; take the right side of the forecock in the right hand; tell one, two, lift it off, and hold it above the head; after the huzzas then put them on at two motions; viz. bring the hats to their heads, fix them; tell one, two, and let their hands fall gracefully down by their sides.

A Feu de Joye.

The ranks are to be closed at half distance; and, when they present, they are to raise their muzzles pretty high

high in the air; the men of each file are to fire together; that is, each file distinctly by itself, and so run quick from one file to another, from right to left.

Oblique Firing.

When a battalion is ordered to fire obliquely to the right, the front rank turns on the left heel, throwing the right leg back to the left of the center rank men in that file; the center rank face on both heels; the rear rank turns on the right heel, stepping forward with the left toe to the center rank men of that file.

Present.

Fire.

The whole come to their proper front, load and shoulder.

Oblique Firing to the Left.

The front rank turns on the left heel, stepping back with the right foot to the right of the center rank men of that file; the center rank turns on both heels to the left; the rear rank turns on the left heel, stepping forward, with the right toe to the center rank heels of the same file.

Present.

Fire.

The whole come to their proper front, load and shoulder.

N. B. In both the above firings, the officers go in the rear of the intervals.

For the other firings see page 25, 26, and 27.

“As it may be often requisite in the course of exercise to rest the soldiers, when perhaps the dustiness of the road or wetness of the grass may render it prejudicial to the arms to have them grounded, it will in that case be of great use to pursue the method generally practised by the German troops, of fixing up their firelocks in files,

by locking the bayonets and ramrod tops together, and spreading out the butts to an exact triangle, at such a distance as to form a steady firm foundation; on service, the advantage of this method above grounding is much to be considered, as by it many * accidents may be prevented in the course of a campaign, when a battalion marches with loaded arms."

Of the Manual Exercise, with Observations.

THE manual is certainly a branch of discipline to be most strictly attended to, from the necessity of a great regularity and uniformity in the manner of using the firelock; as those battalions who can make the briskest fire and sustain the longest have a great superiority over others less expert; and likewise as the efficacy and power of fire does not depend on random and scattering shots, but in the fire together, *well timed and properly directed.*

The manual exercise places a man in the most beautiful attitudes, † gives him an air of ferocity, and nerves his

* On the first expedition to Martinico last war, an officer lost a leg by the discharge of a grounded firelock.

† *The Position of a Soldier under Arms.*

Every soldier must be perfectly attentive, remaining totally silent and steady, and not make the least motion with head, feet, body, or hands, but as is directed: he must stand straight and firm upon his legs, incline his head to the right, keep his heels close, turn his toes a little out, and draw the belly a little in, but without constraint; his breast must be a little projected; his shoulders square to the front and kept back; the right hand hanging straight down the side, with its palm close to the thigh, and the left elbow not turned from the body; the firelock must be carried on the left shoulder, as low down as can be admitted, without constraint; the three last fingers under

his arm with vigour; it quickens his apprehension, makes his limbs active and agile, and teaches him duty and obedience; besides, how pleasing and respectable is order, what pleasure does even the review of a single battalion afford an intelligent officer, to see one perform their evolutions and other parts of the exercise with alertness, ease, and dexterity.

Manual Exercise.

Explanations.

* 1st. SEIZE the firelock with your right hand, and turn the lock outwards, keeping the firelock perpendicular.

* 2d. Bring up the firelock with a quick motion from the shoulder, and seize it with the left hand just above the lock, so that the fingers may lie up the stock and elbows down, and the thumb to lie upon the stock; the firelock must not be held too far from the body, and the left hand must be of an equal height with the eyes.

1st. Turn the barrel opposite to your face, and place your thumb upon the cock, raising the elbow square at this motion.

2d. Cock your firelock by drawing your elbow down, placing your thumb upon the breech pin and the fingers under the guard.

† Step back about six inches to the rear with the right foot, bringing the left toe to the front; at the same

under the butt, the fore-finger and thumb before the swell, the flat of the butt supported against the hip-bone, and so pressed, that the firelock may be felt against the left side, and stand before the hollow of the shoulder, without leaning either towards the head or from it; the barrel must be almost perpendicular.

No. of Motions.

Words of Command.

1 Poise your Firelocks.

2 Cock your Firelocks.

1 Present.

time the butt-end of the firelock must be brought to an equal height with your shoulder, placing the left hand on the swell, and the fore finger of the right hand before the trigger, sinking the muzzle a little.

Fire. • Pull the trigger briskly, and immediately after bringing up the right foot to the inside of the left, come to the priming position, with the lock opposite to the right breast; the muzzle the height of the hat, keeping it firm and steady, and at the same time seize the cock with the fore finger and thumb of the right hand, the back of the hand turned up.

Half cock your Fire Lock. • Half bend the cock briskly with a draw back of the right elbow, bringing it close to the but of the firelock.

Handle your Cartridges. Bring your right hand with a short round to your pouch, slapping it hard; seize the cartridge, and bring it with a quick motion to your mouth, bite the top well off, and hand as low as the chin, with the elbow down.

Prime. Shake the powder into the pan, placing the three last fingers behind the hammer, with the elbow up.

Shut your Pans. 1st. Shut your pans briskly, drawing your right arm at this motion towards your body, holding the cartridge fast in your hand, as in the former position.

2d. Turn the piece nimbly round to the loading position with the lock to the front, and the muzzle the height of the chin, bringing the right hand behind the muzzle; both feet kept fast in this motion.

Charge with Cartridge. 1st. Turn up your hand and put the cartridge into the muzzle, shaking the powder into the barrel.

2d. Place your hand, closed, with a quick and strong motion upon the rammer.

Draw your rammer. 1st. Draw the rammer with a quick motion half out, seizing it at the muzzle back-handed.

2d. Draw

No. 102

2d. Draw it quite out, turn it, and enter it into the muzzle.

Ram the cartridge well down the barrel, instantly recovering and seizing the rammer back-handed at the center, turning it and entering it as far as the lower pipe, placing at the same time the edge of the hand on the butt-end of the rammer, with fingers extended.

Return the rammer, bringing up the piece with the left hand to the shoulder, seizing it with the right under the cock, keeping the left hand fast at the swell, turning the body square to the front.

1st. Quit the left hand and place it strong upon the butt.

2d. Quit the right hand and throw it down the right side.

* 1st. Seize the firelock with your right hand, turning the lock outwards.

* 2d. Raise the firelock from your shoulder, and place your left hand with a quick motion above the lock, holding the piece right up and down in both hands before you, and your left hand even with your eyes.

* 3d. Step briskly back with your right foot, placing it a hand's breadth distant from your left heel, at the same time bring down the firelock as quick as possible to your rest, sinking it as far down before your left-knee as your right hand will permit without constraint; your left hand at the feather spring, and your right with fingers extended held under the guard, taking care to draw in the muzzle well towards your body, and to dress in a line with the butt-end.

1st. Place your firelock nimbly with your left-hand against your right shoulder.

2d. Quit the firelock with the right hand, and sinking it at the same time with your left, *seizing it at the muzzle,*

1 Ram down your Cartridge.

1 Return your rammers.

2 Shoulder your Firelocks.

3 Rest your Firelocks.

3 Order your Firelocks.

muzzle, which must be of an equal height with your chin, and hold it close against your right side.

3d. Lift up your right foot, and place it by your left, at the same time throw back your left hand, by your left side, and with your right, bring down the butt end strong upon the ground, placing it even with the toe of your right foot; the thumb of your right hand lying along the barrel, and the muzzle kept at a little distance from your body.

1st. Half face to the right upon your heels, and at the same time turn the firelock so that the lock may point to the rear, and the flat of the butt-end lie against the inside of your foot, at the same time slipping the right foot behind the butt of the firelock, the right toe pointing to the right and the left to the front.

2d. Step directly forward with your left foot, about as far as the swell of the firelock, and lay it upon the ground, your left hand hanging down by your left leg, and your right kept fast with the butt-end against it.

3d. Raise yourself up again nimbly, bringing back your left foot to its former position, keeping your body faced to the right.

4th. Face again to the left upon your heels, and come to your proper front, letting your hands hang down without motion.

1st. Face to the right upon both heels.

2d. Sink your body down, and come to the position described in the second motion of grounding.

3d. Raise yourself and firelock, bringing it close to your right side.

4th. Come to your proper front, seizing the firelock at the muzzle, as just before explained.

1st. Bring your right hand as far as the swell.

2d. Raise the firelock high up in a perpendicular line from the ground with your right hand, and seize it with

No. Mo.

Ground
your Fire-
locks.

4

Take up
your Fire-
locks.

4

Rest your
Firelocks.

5

with the left above the spring, the cock the height of the waist-belt.

3d. Step back with your right foot, placing it behind your left heel, and come to the rest,

* 1st. Lift up your right foot, and place it by your left, bring the firelock at the same time to your left shoulder, and seize the butt-end with the left hand, keeping it in the same position as before described.

* 2d. Throw your right hand briskly back.

1st. Bring the right hand briskly up, and place it under the cock, keeping the firelock steady in the same position.

2d. Quit the butt with the left hand, seize the firelock with it at the swell, bringing the elbow close down upon the lock; the right hand kept fast in this motion, and the piece still upright.

3d. Quit the right hand and bring it down your right side, bringing the firelock nimbly down to the secure, the left hand in a line with the waist-belt.

1st. Bring the firelock up to a perpendicular line, seizing it with the right hand under the cock.

2d. Quit the left hand and place it strong upon the butt.

3d. Quit the right hand and bring it smartly down the right side.

1st and 2d. Motions as in the two first of the secure.

3d. Quit the right hand and bring the firelock smartly down to the left side with the left hand, as far as it will admit without constraint, seizing the bayonet at the same time with the right hand and fixing it, placing that hand just below the brass, with the piece kept close to the hollow of the shoulder.

1st. Quit the right and bring up the firelock with the left, seize it again under the cock with your right, as in the second motion of secure.

2d. Quit

No. Mo.

2 Shoulder your Firelocks.

3 Secure your Firelocks.

3 Shoulder your Firelocks.

3 Fix your Bayonet.

3 Shoulder your Firelocks.

	No. n. o.	
	3	2d. Quit the left hand and place it strong upon the butt.
	3	3d. Quit the right hand and bring it down the right side.
Present your Arms. To the right Face.	3	As explained in the 3d motion, see page 183 *.
	3	1st. Bring up the firelock with a quick motion high before you, till your left hand comes even with your eyes, with the fingers of that hand extended along the stock just above the feather spring; the right foot to be brought close up to the left heel in this motion.
		2d. Face to the right, taking care in facing to hold the firelock right up and down, and steady in your hands.
		3d. Step back with your right foot and come down to your present.
To the right Face.	3	As in the foregoing explanation.
To the right about Face.	3	As in the foregoing explanation, coming to the right about, instead of to the right.
To the left Face.	3	1st. Bring the right foot to the hollow of your left with the firelock in the same position as in the first motion of facing to the right.
		2d. Face to the left.
		3d. Come down to the present.
To the left Face, To the left about Face.	3	As before.
	3	As before, coming to the left about, instead of to the left.
Shoulder your Firelocks. Charge your Bayonets.	2	As in the two motions of explanation, see page 185 *.
	2	1st. As in explanation one, see page 181 *.
		2d. Bring the swell of the firelock down strong upon the palm of the hand, turning upon both the heels to the right, the right hand grasping the piece at the small behind the lock, and as high as the waist-belt, the firelock upon a level with the barrel upwards.
Shoulder your Firelocks.	2	1st. Bring up the firelock to the shoulder, place the left hand upon the butt, bringing the feet square to the front.
		2d. Quit

2d. Quit the right hand, and throw it down the right side.

1st and 2d. As in explanation one, see page 181 *.

3d. Bring the firelock down the right side with the right hand as low as it will admit without constraint, flipping up the left hand at the same time to the swell, the guard between the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, the three last fingers under the cock with the barrel to the rear.

4th. Quit the left hand.

1st. Bring up the left hand and seize it at the swell.

2d. Come smartly up to a poise.

3d and 4th. Shoulder.

Manual finished, see plans 1 and 2.

No. Mo.

4 Advance your Arms:

4 Shoulder your Firelocks.

Priming and Loading.

Prime and Load. 1st. COME smartly to the recover by springing the firelock straight up with the left hand, turning the barrel inwards to the proper height of the recover; at the same time that the left hand springs the firelock, the right hand is raised briskly from the right side, and seizes the firelock across the breast; as it rises below the cock, the left hand comes with a quick motion from the butt, and seizes the firelock strong above the lock, the little finger of the left hand at the spring of the lock, the left hand at an equal height with the face, the butt close to the body, but not pressed, the firelock perpendicular opposite the left side of the face.

2d. Bring the firelock down with a brisk motion to the priming position, the left hand holding the firelock, as in priming, the thumb of the right hand placed against the face of the steel, the fingers clenched, and the elbow a little turned out that the wrist may be clear of the cock.

3d. Open

3d. Open the pan by throwing up the steel with a strong motion of the right arm, turning the elbow in and keeping the firelock steady in the left hand.

4th. Handle your cartridge.

5th. Prime.

6th. Shut pans.

7th. Cast about.

8th and 9th. Load.

10th and 11th. Draw rammers.

12th. Ram down the cartridge.

13th. Return the rammers.

14th and 15th. Shoulder.

N. B. The motion of recovering and coming down to the priming position and opening pans, to be done in the usual time; the motions of handling cartridges, to shutting pans, to be done as quick as possible; when the pans are shut a small pause is to be made and cast about together; then the loading motions are to be done as quick as possible; but before the rammer is returned, another small pause is to be made, counting one, two between each motion, till the firelock is shouldered.

Position of each Rank in the Firings.

Frons Rank.

SPRING the firelock briskly to the recover, keeping the left foot fast in this motion; so soon as the firelock is at the recover, without any stop sink the body briskly without stooping forward, with a quick motion down upon the right knee, the butt-end of the firelock at the same time falls upon the ground; the front part of the butt to be in a line with the heel of the left foot; so soon as the butt comes to the ground, the firelock is to be cocked, immediately seizing the cock and steel in the right-hand, the firelock to be held firm in the left-hand

Words of Command.	No. of Mot.
Making ready.	1

hand about the middle of that part of the firelock between the lock and the swell of the stock; the point of the left thumb to be close to the swell pointing upwards.

As the body is sinking, the right knee is to be thrown so far back as the left leg may be right up and down, the right foot to be thrown a little to the right, the body to be kept straight, the head up, looking to the right along the rank, the same as if shouldered; the firelock to be upright, and butt about four inches to the right of the inside of the left foot.

Bring the firelock briskly down to the present by extending the left arm to the full length with a strong motion, at the same time spring up the butt by the cock with the right hand, and raise up the butt so high upon the right shoulder, that you may not be obliged to stoop too much with the head, the right cheek to be close to the butt and the left eye shut, and look along the barrel with the right eye from the breech pin to the muzzle; keep the left elbow down in an easy position, and stand as steady as possible, the thumb of the right hand to remain in the position as described in the explanation of the manual, see page 181 †.

Pull the trigger as directed in the manual, and so soon as the piece is fired, give yourself a strong spring upon your left leg, raising your body briskly and straight up keeping your left foot fast and bringing the right heel to the inside of the left, at the same time the firelock is to be brought up to the priming position, and half cocked immediately; a short pause is to be made, then handle cartridges and go on with the loading motions described in the explanation of prime and load.

Center

No. Mo.

Present.

Fire.

*Center Rank.*Making
ready.

1 Spring the firelock briskly to the recover, so soon as the left hand seizes the firelock above the lock, the right elbow is to be nimbly raised a little, placing the thumb of that hand upon the cock, the fingers open by the plate of the lock, and as quick as possible force the piece to the cock, by dropping the elbow, and forcing down the cock with the thumb, stepping at the same time a moderate pace to the right, keeping the left foot fast; as the firelock is cocked, the thumb is to fall below the cock, the right hand seizing the firelock close under the cock firmly; the fore finger not to be before the trigger; the piece to be held in this position perpendicular opposite the left side of the face, the butt close to the left breast, but not pressed, the body to be straight, and as full to the front as possible; the head kept up, looking to the right of the rank, that the body and the firelock may not stoop forward, nor lean much out of the rank.

Present.

2 Spring the firelock from the body to arms length with a quick motion, pressing down the muzzle with the left hand, and spring up the butt with the right hand, as in the foregoing explanation of the front rank.

Fire.

2 As in explanation four in the manual, with this difference, that the left foot is to be brought up to the right at the same time that the firelock is brought down to the priming position, see page 182 *.

The loading motions, as in the explanations of priming and loading, and at the last motion of shouldering, to spring to the left again and cover the file leaders.

*Rear Rank.*Making
ready.

1 Recover the firelock and cock as before directed for the center rank; as the firelock is recovered and cocked,
step

step briskly straight to the right with the right-foot a full pace, bringing the left heel about six inches before the right foot, the body straight and as square to the front as possible.

As in explanation of the center rank.

As in explanation of the center rank, and as the fire-lock is coming down to the priming position, the left foot is to be brought back to the right, and at the last motion of shouldering, to spring to the left again, and cover the file leader.

No. Mo.

1 Present.

1 Fire.

Of the Column.

“IT is striking indeed and formidable in appearance, and the idea of it, which at first presents itself, may for a while seduce our judgment, till trying it in execution they become convinced of the error; though an author of some note says, “ the impetuosity and violence of the shock of the column is generally allowed, even by those who have been least sparing of their criticism on this regulation:” to this I must reply, “ that every man is to be allowed eighteen inches; and the flanks of the column are to face outwards, which flanks must always be composed of forty file at least in depth; upon twenty-four ranks in breadth: thus when faced, it consequently takes up sixty feet for its flank front: in marching it requires one hundred, which is double its former distance, because a man will not be able to move “ or handle his arms without treading upon or disordering his leader,” if confined within the space of eighteen inches: but to march with celerity, must be allowed three feet; so that when the front of the column marches first off its ground, the rear are not to move till it has gained sixty paces, and likewise to march the same distance after the front has halted; which, as it must make intervals in the

flanks, will expose them to great danger: this defect will naturally be increased in proportion to the number of files which are added; so that a column consisting of two hundred and forty will occupy in its standing order three hundred and sixty feet in length, and of course seven hundred and twenty, marching. After having pierced the enemy, its flanks are to face to the right and left outwards, in order to charge their broken ranks; but as it takes up double its proper allowance of ground, its files will remain open, and large intervals be left; especially if the charge is made with speed and impetuosity, which ought to be the property of the column.

“ The reader will be very much deceived in imagining it to be a body capable of moving with ease; inasmuch, that I do not know any thing so unwieldy, particularly when formed as before described; first, because the difficulty of maintaining order; secondly, the lengthening of its files, when the column is to advance or retreat, which hinders the rear from stopping at the same time, or with the same expedition as the head, from turning to right or left and marching without confusion on either of its flanks; thirdly, the dreadful havock that an enemy's artillery would make in files so deep. Thus it becomes a huge, inactive mass, divested of all manner of regularity and totally involved in confusion; I do not think that the weight of it can be of any real service, for the men do not press one another forward in the manner described, neither is it possible they should, while they take up three paces distance, which they are obliged to do in marching.

“ In retreating, it has the advantage of battalions formed in the square, not that it is capable of marching with more celerity, but because every part moves together; and although it be even pierced by the enemy's cavalry in pursuit, yet the injury it will thereby sustain

is

is inconsiderable; for they must be exposed to a fire from behind, and the interval they make will presently be closed up.

“Two battalions, formed back to back, will answer the same purpose, marching by files, and facing to the right and left outwards; this method of retreating must be performed very slowly; for otherwise the rear will soon be separated from the main body, by reason of that distance of three feet which every man will take up in marching.—But to believe, that the column is an active and light body, is an error of which I am thoroughly convinced; inasmuch that I am even induced to think it a dangerous disposition, when composed of but twenty-four by sixteen, on account of the difficulty of forming it again, when once broken or disordered: properly, it should never consist in breadth of more than two battalions, formed each four deep, which does not at all confound their natural order:

“What I have been saying concerning the room which every man must necessarily take up, shews the danger of marching by files: if you do it in the presence of an enemy, in order to fill up any interval, you must inevitably be undone; for your battalion will then occupy double its former quantity of ground, and you will also require double the proper time to form it again; as for instance, supposing your battalion consists of 600 men with files closed, then it will cover 225 feet; if it is to gain ground to the right, the right hand man will have marched that distance before the left-hand man has moved; and after the former has halted, the latter will have the same number of feet to march before the battalion can be in its proper order to face to the front again; which together takes up as much time as would be necessary to march the distance of 450 feet. If then the enemy is a hundred paces off,

N

and

and seizes this opportunity to charge you, he will have the advantage of as much time before you can be formed, as is required to march eighty paces: the danger of this movement naturally increases in proportion as you augment the number of troops that are to make it; for if you have four battalions, and the enemy is at the distance of 800 paces, you are exposed to as great a disadvantage: in this I proceed upon geometrical principles, to which it is necessary to have recourse on many occasions in war.

“The tact or cadence is the only effectual remedy for these defects, on which the event of all engagements totally depends: it is what I have dwelt upon the longer, on purpose to demonstrate the great efficacy of it, and at the same time to expose the ignorance of our modern disciplinarians, who, notwithstanding they all agree in regard to the reality of these errors, remain yet unacquainted with any other method of avoiding them in practice than by marching flow.

“We cannot even bring a single battalion, drawn up but four deep, to the charge without being subject to the inconvenience of which I have been speaking; unless we march at a snail's pace, our ranks and files, when we approach the enemy, are open. This monstrous defect in our discipline is what gave rise to the present method of firing; for to charge otherwise, it is necessary to move briskly and together; which cannot be done, allowing only eighteen inches a man without the tactic.

“The other imperfections to which the column are liable, in common with all other figures of tactics, cannot be an object of censure or argument.”

Of Manœuvres.

A manœuvre or movement should be distinct, simple, natural, and executed by the shortest means; for a battalion may be taught to execute them at a single word or signal: "for when an action is too much compounded to be capable of being performed in four or five motions, it ought to be divided in two or three words of command at most, and not to over burthen the memory and attention of the soldier, which generally is but very moderate."

To render a manœuvre serviceable, beside celerity there should be a connection between each platoon, company, and division, so that they may be able to support one another in case of accidents, that the strength of them may encrease every moment, and be continually in readiness for repulsing the enemy at these critical moments, where they suddenly stop with a design to attack.

A battalion practised to manœuvres in quick time, will do it with as little discomposure as those who move slow; soldiers accustomed to step with a quick pace, will be in as good wind, and as little hurried or disordered in their business, as those constantly practising nothing but the parade step.

The principal of the changes of position for a battalion are, to make one or more fronts, contract and re-extend the front in all various modes; hence, one, two, or three sorts of change cannot be sufficient; but a readiness and expertness in all must be necessary for the necessities of war.

MILITARY COURSE.

FIFTH PART.

Precautions to be taken in Marching of the Battalion.

THE first thing to be taken into consideration is the enemies situation, of their garrisons and their posts; their distances and movements from their intended march; "the nature of the intervening ground, whether your march be covered either by strong places, narrow defiles, or impassable rivers; whether it be a close or an open country, &c. because according to these circumstances, the more or fewer precautions are to be taken, though a prudent officer will always march with equal precaution; which, it is true, may give more trouble, but then it will prevent all possibility of a surprize*: if the enemy have a body of men in the field at no great distance before you, or if you are to march towards, or, perhaps, to pass by some of their garrisons, or if the country you are to march through be hilly, woody, or cut through by defiles, valleys, and rivers, you cannot in this case be too careful in marching:" as

* The greatest misfortune that can befall an officer.

armies have been saved by nice discernment and good information*.

A Commanding officer should be very circumspect in his examination of such intelligence as he may receive from deserters, and never undertake any thing by their advice before he hath made himself secure of their persons; for though they should leave even their wives and children as hostages for their fidelity, yet they are ever to be suspected: he must also take great care of his guides, and never let them sleep on the march, lest the Horses, being left to their will, take a different routs.

Of PARTIES.

AN officer who commands one should be acquainted with the country, roads, and defiles, &c. if deficient in that respect, an able guide should be provided. An officer should avoid being heard or seen till he has executed his orders, after which he should return by a different road from that he took, lest the enemy lay in wait to intercept him: he must keep clear of all towns, of villages, and even of single houses, if obliged to pass through or near them; he should do it in the night with a smart regular run, to prevent his numbers from being known; yet must always guard against surprize, and never suffer a single man to remain behind, lest he should betray his party.

* In the war with the Samnites, *Cornelius*, the Roman Consul, was repulsed in a valley, and in the greatest danger of being cut off, when *Decius*, the Tribune, upon an accurate observation of the country discovered an eminence and the avenues that led to it, and by securing a retreat, saved the army from its destruction.

When the men are to be refreshed, it should be under some hedge, or in a ditch, copse, &c. that they may be concealed, and if they need refreshment (their own provisions being out) let him send an intelligent, sagacious soldier to the nearest village, and when brought out, detach one or more to bring them to the place so concealed, that the peasants, &c. may be prevented from seeing their strength and situation.

If he receives certain intelligence of a party of the enemy being superior to him, and that he is marching in order to intercept him, I would have the officer send the most active drummer or fifer to beat or play the long march a different road from that he intends to take, with orders to conceal himself from the enemy, by which means the enemy may be induced to follow their sound, and give time to form an ambuscade, or to pursue their march quietly.

Of S P I E S.

AS intelligence is of the greatest advantage to the commander, so it is known to be the life of the battalion; therefore he endeavours to find out proper persons for the employment, and fix correspondence in the enemy's camp, and, if possible, in their councils; for which he should spare no cost; as money is known to be the sinews of war, and a key to the cabinet of princes*.

In

* I have been told a story of a person who the late Duke of MARLBOROUGH employed as a spy, that personated a German Count, was a man of address, and provided with a very fine equipage, servants, and every thing answerable to the character he was to assume, and money, the principal ingredient, was not wanting. He procured a recommendation to
some

In procuring of which, too much attention cannot be had, as they serve for eyes to the head, and are equally as essential to those who command.

The spies are to consist of various ranks or orders; some to associate with the soldiers, others to follow the enemy under disguise of pedlars; and above all amongst their suttlers and purveyors of provisions; because their stores, magazines, &c. furnish the best intelligence concerning their real design: the spies are to render an account of themselves every day or night (if practicable) and guard as much as possible against being corrupted, &c.

There is no surer sign of knowing when a spy is near his own destruction, than when he is observed to be careless and unconcerned at a time he is pressed with difficulties; therefore they never should have any thing

some person of quality in the French army, then set out and remained with it till the end of the war. By means of this man the Duke was informed of several things which he could never have known any other way: but this man being once at a loss, and afraid of being discovered, or else abandoned by the Duke, for want of intelligence, he therefore suffered himself to be taken prisoner upon reconnoitering, by which means he settled his correspondence a-new, and carried it on till the end of the war. I only mention this story as an instance that the General leaves no method untried that can possibly bring him acquainted with the enemy's strength and designs, and with what succours he can expect, from whence they come, and how long they will be in coming; the calculation of time and place making great part of the General's character. By knowing the strength of his enemy, he best judges what ground he must take, in opening the campaign, and by penetrating into his enemy's design, he the easier frustrates them; as by his motions the General judges if your intelligence be right.

communicated to them, but what is absolutely necessary they should know.

Of GUIDES.

THESE being well chosen, of good and faithful men, who understand the language of the country they are to serve in, are of great advantage to the battalion, because they will then be well conducted by them, or sent to any detached body, according as they may be wanted; but if ill chosen, they are known to give unnecessary trouble and fatigue, by misleading those they are to guide, and instead of marching ten miles, they will march twenty, and perhaps from a want of a knowledge of that road, may unfortunately draw the battalion into an ambuscade, if the greatest precautions are not taken.

Of the Advance Guard.

IN a champaign country they may march as far as four hundred yards in front; but where it is interspersed with woods, inclosures, defiles, &c. they are not to advance above two hundred.

This guard must not only reconnoitre in front but on the flanks, to prevent their being unexpectedly attacked; all straggling houses or villages, through which the regiment is to march or pass near, must also be reconnoitred, that it may not be impeded: vigilance and attention in the passage of hollow ways, woods, and thickets must be most strictly observed.

When the Commanding officer thinks it necessary to view any woods or villages, he must halt at about the distance of sixty yards, and send a Serjeant with a few files to reconnoitre and send him proper intelligence,
after

after which he continues the march; if they discover any troops, he is to halt, and send immediately to the Commanding officer an account of such discoveries: but if the enemy endeavours to fall upon him before the messenger returns, he must perform the street-firing, retreating till he joins his corps; if the ground he is forced to retreat on be very narrow, he must reduce his guard, if numbers allow of it, into two platoons; but if he perceives the enemy inclined to retreat, he then remains on his ground till joined by his regiment; for did he pursue, the enemy might have a reserve in ambush that would destroy the party.

The advance guard is to be strengthened in the night-time, and march at only one hundred yards distance from the regiment.

Of the Baggage Guard.

THE waggons are, if possible, to be numbered by companies, and follow one another regularly: a covering party must be appointed, which, if the battalion is not strong, may, through necessity, be the rear guard: when the officer has reason to apprehend himself in danger, he must take every necessary step to frustrate the enemy's designs, and deprive them of all opportunities to surprize him, or attack his baggage; for which purpose it will be absolutely requisite to have patrols upon the flanks, in order to discover their ambuscade in time, so as to take proper measures effectually to counteract and disappoint them.

Of the Rear Guard.

THE rear guard is to march one hundred yards in the rear of the baggage, and to make prisoners all soldiers who

who shall have stayed behind the regiment, which many do to desert, maraud, or plunder; therefore the officer must be careful in having every place examined where they can be suspected of concealing themselves.

If any man is taken ill, and incapable of marching, two careful men of this guard must be left with him, till one of them can be spared to inform the Commanding officer where such man is left, and what is his disorder.

This guard is also a security for the battalion, and a protection to the baggage; for the instant that any troops appear in the rear, or on the flanks, its officer must send off intelligence to acquaint the Commanding officer; and, if attacked in the mean time, oppose them in the best manner he can, by retreating in a regular manner, and making a stand at every spot he can dispute. If the enemy should cut off his communication, he must endeavour to gain the nearest place of security; but he must not attempt that while the smallest hope remains of being able to maintain his distance, or while the baggage is in danger.

Of Ambuscades, with a Remark.

IT is the duty of an officer commanding to derive advantages from every situation which nature presents to him; such as a hollow way, a small wood, a dry ditch, the grotto of a mountain, a garden, a court-yard, a field of corn, a thick hedge, and plains covered with brush-wood are very commodious for placing infantry in ambuscade, because from thence you can see at some distance the number of the enemy, and the order in which they march and approach; so that you can march out to attack them, or if superior, have a free retreat on all sides.

AN

An active officer oftener employs stratagem than open force; and by multiplying small advantages, procures at last a decisive one: ambuscades are the surest means to accomplish small successes, and with the fewest men, I therefore shall only treat of those as being attended with little risque.

Small ambuscades are snares for an enemy, will take them by surprize when marching without precaution*, or draw them there by different stratagems, to attack them at a great disadvantage, or they serve to carry off magistrates or hostages for the payment of contributions.

In short, ambuscades may be employed to carry off couriers, or small convoys of the enemy, who pass be-

* A battalion consisting of five hundred men (commanded by a Colonel whose whole time of service did not exceed twelve years) being ordered to march from one quarter to another, and imagined, from the distance of the enemy's frontier garrisons, which was at thirty miles distance, that he had nothing to apprehend from the enemy, therefore neglected the common precautions taken by an old officer, in ordering his advance guard to reconnoitre all suspected places, where men might lie concealed; beside which, he took no care in keeping up his files, but permitted them to run into a rear of a mile long.

A large brush wood stood a long side of the road, close by which they was to march, and in this a complete company of light infantry lay concealed, divided into two divisions; the advance guard passed by without examining it, and as soon as the center of the battalion come opposite to the interval between the two divisions, they rushed out, fired upon them and charged bayonets; one division attacking the right of the colours, and the other the left, and after killing and wounding about three hundred of them, the rest surrendered themselves prisoners; for the men having their tent poles fastened to their firelocks could make no resistance, and by marching in this straggling manner could not form in time.

twcen

tween their army and, their great towns; but in all these cases the parties who form them must be attended by good guides, who know all the bridges, rivulets, fords, passes, marshes, foot-paths through woods or over mountains, &c. that they may retire through roads unknown to the enemy.

As soon as they arrive at the place where they are to form the ambuscade, the Commanding officer will post the men where they can see farthest on all sides; but, that they may not themselves be perceived at a distance by the colour of their cloaths, or the glittering of their arms, the sentries should place their firelocks on the ground, and lay themselves amongst the leaves or bushes on the eminence where they are placed; for from the summit of a little hill or rising ground, a man sees more than a mile: if there is no rising ground, they can place the sentries towards the top of thick bushy trees, behind branches, or cover them by some small brush-wood they may have carried with them for the purpose.

If it is necessary to keep in ambuscade for more than one day, it is supposed they have brought provisions and water, lest by their going for either they might be discovered.

Orders of Regulations to be observed by the Officer commanding the Companies on Board each Transport

Day of 17

Parole Gloucester—Countersign Cumberland.

THE Commanding officer on board will give all necessary directions for the preservation of the men's health, and when the weather permits the men are to eat upon deck; cleanliness in their births and bedding are the best preservative of health: the hammocks and bedding

are

are to be examined by the Non-commissioned officers commanding squads every fourth day, to see that none have any vermin or filth in them; and when in port (if warm weather) the soldiers are to wash their bedding.

The Non-commissioned officers and men, while at sea, are to wear their foraging caps, and their coats with their lining out; except when they may expect to be landed.

A Subaltern officer of the day to be appointed, who is to be on deck upon all occasions; and a guard, to consist of one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, and twenty private men, to keep strict order and to prevent fire. As it may possibly happen that the transports may be separated from the convoy, the Commanding-officer on board each transport is to post his men to their particular quarters, and turn them out with their arms, at least once a day whilst they continue at anchor, if the weather is fair, that they may know how to do it readily, and without confusion, in case of necessity: the men are to turn out with their waist-belts slung, as on the march, and not fix their bayonets, unless the enemy attempt to board them: all the recruits who have not fired ball, must be posted at the cannon, and as many more of the soldiers as are acquainted with that service, and will be sufficient to work the guns: the cartridges are to be taken from those men and distributed among such as have distinguished themselves in firing at the mark: the firelocks belonging to the recruits and the men ordered to the guns, must be kept on deck loaded, and carefully put up in an arm chest, ready for an emergency: the same number of cartouch-boxes filled with cartridges likewise must be put up in a safe place, to be ready on the shortest notice.

In case of dark nights or fogs, when you hear or see a vessel come near you, she must be hailed to prevent
your

your being deceived by an enemy: the ship hailed, if of the convoy, will return her name; then ask the other her's, and exchange with each other the parole and counter-sign, that you may not be surprized by a ship of war or privateer lurking near you by night or in hazy weather.

If you should be attacked by a privateer, your expedient will be a close engagement; the foldiers therefore are not to be suffered to shew themselves on deck till the enemy is very near and quite under the command of your small arms; and even then they are not to presume to fire till they are ordered: it is not expected that in such confined situation they should fire by platoon, but singly as they can take aim: they are not to be in too great a hurry in loading, but to be careful to shake the powder out of the cartridge before they ram it down.

If the Commanding officer finds it necessary to hold a regimental court-martial on board, he may (a sufficient number of officers being present) likewise put the sentence in execution.

Ten women is allowed for each company, and none are to be suffered to embark or remain on board but those of good character, and the lawful wives of the foldiers.

No boat to be hoisted out at sea, but upon the most urgent occasion, or when a signal is thrown out for that purpose.

Order of Embarking into the Flat-bottom Boats.

THE boats being ready, the rowers enter first and seat themselves; then the person who guides the rudder, with the men appointed for the guns; then the right-hand platoon, the left following: all being properly fixed, they sail when the signal is given, observing silence
and

and attention, as false alarms are hurtful to a battalion, and a disgrace to those that make them.

N. B. I apprehend it may be the business of the officer commanding the navy at the embarkation (being best acquainted with coasts, tides, currents, shoals, &c.) to point out the time, &c. and to be aiding and assisting as much as he can to cover the landing with his shipping; as also two lieutenants of the navy with a man of war's boat each should be directed; the one to lead the eight boats dressed as described hereafter, and the other the grenadiers and light infantry.

Regulations for Debarking a Battalion on an Hostile Shore.

THE battalion being loaded, bayonets fixed, and told off in wings, grand and sub-divisions, platoons, &c. is prepared to receive the enemy.

My design is to shew how to debark a regiment, by which we may have an idea, how a landing may be made with many.

To do this we must debark one company in each boat from the ship; there will be by this plan ten boats, I shall therefore distinguish the eight battalion companies by some particular colour, viz. a small blue colour, to fly on a staff at the bow like a jack, and a streamer of the same colour at the stern; the grenadiers and light infantry may have a red at ditto; these colours placed as described will distinguish the eight boats which are named for the battalion, and the two for grenadiers and light infantry.

Care must be taken that the boats preserve their proper intervals, as companies do theirs upon the march; that a boat upon the right may not fall into the center, or
get

get upon the left, nor one of the left into the right, and so of the rest.

I shall suppose each company a sub-division, and that each rank and file consist of one hundred men; but by sickness, &c. are reduced to ninety-six, which I shall dispose of in a flat bottom boat in the following manner.

The sub-division is divided into two platoons of fourteen half files each, which makes eighty-four men, rank and file.; the remaining four half files, are to be stationed to the two pound gun at each end, which will amount to ninety-six.

Each boat should have twenty-five failors, but in case that number cannot be had, a file or two more must be taken from the platoons, and employed at the oars. In the center of the boat eight rowers, four on each side; in the front and rear of these center rowers, one platoon at each; on each of these stands are eight more rowers, disposed of in the same manner as those in center, and one able man is appointed to the rudder.

The soldiers allotted to the guns should be men who have been trained to the field-pieces.

Being drawn up three deep the two parts of the boat, the platoons cover are raised a little higher than the rest of the floor of the boat; so that when the front and rear rank of the platoons sit down easy on the edge of this raised part, there may be space enough between them to have about eight inches breadth of the whole length of the raised part about eight or ten inches higher than the other raised part; which will be a little bench for the center rank to sit upon; by this, as in the degrees of a playhouse, they overlook those before them: what the front and the rear ranks, as they sit, rest their feet on, may be sunk a few inches: this is the position, whilst out of reach of the enemy. The front and center ranks of all the platoons must sit one way, with either
their

their right or left side towards the prow of the boat, and the rear rank of the whole, when sitting, will consequently be reversed, but when they draw near the shore or enemy, they stand up and face with the rest, by which means they will be as much higher than the center rank, as they are than the front, and consequently may fire together.

If they are ordered to make ready to fire, the front rank and rear ranks rest the butts of their firelocks on the floor of the boat; the center ranks rest on the floor the front rank sets on; when they are to make ready to fire they must rest them on their knees, and the rear rises with recovered arms; and when the rear rank stands up, the front and rear ranks move a step to the front and rear, to give themselves and the center rank room to load.

The men are to be quite silent when they are about to land, and must not on any account fire out of the boat without orders. Soldiers must be obedient and attentive to their officers, and determined in the due execution of their duty.

The colours of the battalion are to embark in the boat with the Commanding officer, and to be kept furled till ordered otherwise.

For the flat-bottom boats to draw up in a line with the Commanding officers, the colours are to be advanced and flying; if for only the boats of the eight battalion companies, one colour only; and the boats with the grenadiers and light infantry will make feints, when and where the enemy least expect it, in order to make good their landing and drive the enemy from little posts they may occupy.

The officers of the eight companies must be careful in forming into battalion, that they make no mistake

O

or

or are thrown into disorder, but form as fast as they land, and charge whatever may present itself.

Should the battalion penetrate into the country, they should not pursue the enemy without orders, but advance and support the grenadiers and light infantry*.

If field-pieces, they should be landed with the utmost expedition, and move with the battalion.

* Those being chosen men are attentive to their behaviour, and the praises and reproaches which each man has to expect from witnesses from whom he is to pass his life, are powerful inducements to those of the battalion to follow their example; they dread having reason to blush at their conduct before a comrade, and in some measure it is this salutary dread that constitutes what we term the spirit of corps, which preserves and cherishes the courage of a soldier.

A MILITARY COURSE.

SIXTH PART.

Of the Choice of Men to compose the Grenadiers and Light Infantry Companies, with Remarks.

“THE absolute necessity of these companies need not at all be descanted upon; be the war in east, west, north, or south, they must ever be useful; and no war can so well be carried on without them as with them:” but then a particular attention must be had as to the chusing of them: they should be men whose health, strength, and activity can most be depended upon; that are good marksmen; and in point of marching, &c. are superior to those who pique themselves of size: it is a mistaken opinion that size alone is a qualification for either.

These men should be accustomed to move at the rate of four miles the hour without being the least fatigued, and twenty-four miles a day when necessity demands it, without distress: they should also be instructed how to swim, that when they come to a river, and no bridge was nigh, they might make a kind of a raft for cloaths, &c. and swim across.

Of the Choice of Pioneers.

THEY should be men of exceeding good constitutions, strong and robust, able to undergo the greatest hardships and fatigues, as they are often sent forward with the Quarter-master, to assist in making the necessary preparations against the arrival of the battalion.

Of the Choice of Camp-colour Men.

AS to their size it is very immaterial, provided they are sober, honest, good men, and capable of marching with the pioneers, as they often move and act together.

Tall, thin made men are very improper for grenadiers, but would do for camp-colour men, if they answer in every other respect.

Of Bas-Men.

AS the care and preservation of the bas-horses of a battalion in a great measure depends upon the bas-men, it requires great judgment in the appointing of them; a remarkable degree of honesty and sobriety are absolutely necessary to be attended to; beside they must be strong, active men, thoroughly acquainted with the nature of packing up and loading the horses, that an equal weight may hang on each side, so as not to gall them; that they fodder their horses regularly, rub them down, carry them well, and examine their shoes every time they return from water.

Directions

Directions for the Conduct and Government of the Soldier.

THE soldier must pay the greatest attention to the articles of war when he hears them read; he must remember the oaths he has taken to his Majesty's service, and the divine vengeance that will attend the violation of them; he must have an ambition; learn to despise danger, and prefer to fall like a brave man, rather than be branded with the name of coward.

He is to be sober and orderly in his behaviour, respectful to his superiors, and obedient to all officers from the Commander to the Lance Corporal, and obey the latter as if coming from the mouth of the former, as in reality they do, the Corporal being the usual way by which they are conveyed.

He should be brave, vigorous, and careful; keep his uniform, as well as other apparel, neat and clean; his arms and accoutrements bright and in excellent order; the use of the former he ought diligently to study, and also his different duties; he should be master of the beats of the drum and tunes of the fife, and attend his colour faithfully upon all occasions.

He is ever to be alert and observe his orders; ask no reasons for them, or dare to think them of little consequence; the excuse of a soldier convicted of quitting or sleeping upon his post, frequently is, that he thought no bad consequences could attend it; how absurd! the necessity of his being posted there is evident by his being ordered there; and there might, unknown to him, be a quantity of powder, &c. concealed, that his officer might not think proper to inform him of. *It was his orders, and let them be his guide.*

In time of war or rebellion, he is not to suffer any person to advance upon him when sentry, except a friend,

the patrol, relief, or round, and they are to be challenged at about twenty yards distance: the first answering, friend, and naming his name and business, is to be permitted to pass, in case he has no suspicion of his being an enemy: the second will answer, patrol of the guard, and name the guard; pass, patrol: the third will answer, relief; advance; relief: and the fourth will answer, round; pass, round, all's well: but in case planted sentry at the guard-room door; he will say, stand, round, Serjeant, turn out the guard; after which he is not to suffer them to advance till all the other requisites are performed.

When sentry, if any troops appear in fight, a fire breaks out, a tumultuous assembly happens; or taken so ill as to deprive him of the use of his arms, he is immediately to call out to the next sentry to pass the word to the guard, in order to be relieved; for a sentry sleeping on his post, leaving it before he shall be regularly relieved, or suffering himself to be surprized upon it, shall be punished without mercy.

When a commissioned officer advances near his post, he is to stand shouldered, carrying his arms well and giving a full front; to those whom he is to rest, keeps walking backwards and forwards; after he has paid him the compliment, he is to stand shouldered.

If any guard, party, or body of troops marches by his post, with drum beating or fife playing, he is to rest his arms, and remain so till they have marched by; but if neither drum or fife beat or play, he is to stand shouldered.

When sentry he is not to suffer himself to be relieved but by a Corporal or Lance-corporal of the guard, nor is he to wear a watch coat, except in very rainy weather; and then he must not take shelter in his box, if it is possible to stand the rain and storm without

without detriment to his arms: he is to make no noise by singing, whistling, or otherwise, or suffer any person so to do on his post.

When in quarters he is to behave in a decent soldier-like manner, not giving the landlord any more trouble than there is a necessity for, but endeavour to obtain his good-will by a propriety of conduct, which will ever distinguish the soldier and the christian; and avoiding all quarrels and arguments with them and others; if on the other hand, he finds the landlord ill treats him, or does not give him his allowance, he will make his complaint to the Commanding officer of his company.]

If taken sick, he is immediately to send to the non-commissioned officer commanding his squad, who will acquaint the doctor of the regiment, as no man must apply to old women, quack doctors, or any other person, as they will ruin the constitution, and make the disorder more difficult to cure.

When on furlough, he is strictly enjoined to appear as clean and well-dressed as at any other time; for should it by chance be known he has been otherwise, he will never again be indulged with that liberty.

No soldier must carry coals, or any other thing on their head when they have their regimental cloaths or hat on; nor must they carry any children about the barrack yard, town, village, or camp; nor is he allowed to work if he does not produce to his officer a coat, waistcoat, and hat for that purpose; nor excused from his being under arms, under pretence of working, or any other reason, but that of being included in the surgeon's list.

When he meets an officer of the army or navy, he is to stand fast, giving him a full front, at the same time pull off his hat with the left hand, letting it fall in a graceful manner to the extent of his arm; to be

careful of his carriage, and not to contract an unsoldier-like air; if a cap on, he must bring up the back of the right hand to the front of his cap, and remain so till the officer passes.

If aggrieved or ill used by any non-commissioned officer, he must on no account use any abusive language to him; on the contrary, he is first to obey, and then lay the complaint before his Captain or Officer commanding the company, who will procure him justice; but he is to observe, they are not to be encouraged to make false and frivolous complaints, for in such cases he himself will be the sufferer.

To clean the Barrel.

AFTER every firing day the barrel is to be washed, by taking it out of the stock, and putting the breeching into water, leaving the touch-hole open; then with an iron ramrod and worm, with a piece of toe or rag, draw up and down the barrel till it becomes quite clean; when dry rub it with another piece of clean rag, and the outside of the barrel with buff leather. The lock not to be taken to pieces but when necessity requires it, and that is, when the trigger or hammer goes stiff or unpleasant.

To clean Accoutrements.

THEY should be cleaned with a ball of white pipe clay, to be crumbled into very small pieces, mixed with allum and laid on very thin with a soft brush, it is preferable to whitening or oker; when good pipe clay cannot be had, search must be made to find a kind of whitish, which, when properly cleaned and washed, and then mixed as one part to seven, will answer pretty well.

Lu

In the inspection reports, pages 114 and 115, are to be found the different articles which the soldier is to be supplied with.

Of the Conduct and Duty of the Corporal.

THE Corporal should be honest, sober, and diligent, well skilled in the use of the firelock, and ability to teach it; his arms and accoutrements to be kept in such a state of perfection as ever to be desirous of shewing them; a neatness in his dress and a quickness of comprehension, with a knowledge of reading, writing, and accounts necessary to discharge the duty.

He is to have the care of the men of his squad, and to be answerable for their soldier-like appearance; to instruct them in their several duties, and teach them the respect and obedience they are to pay to superiors: when visiting their quarters, he is without favor or affection to report those men complained of by their landlords; if absent, or any of their arms, accoutrements, or necessaries missing.

Before he marches off his men for the general parade or place appointed for their assembling, he is to inspect their arms, accoutrements, and cloaths, to see they are in perfect order, their firelocks well flinted, and that they have their due quantity of ammunition, and whatever else is necessary for the duty they are ordered on.

He is to number off the relieving guard, beginning where directed, and to march them by a bold regular step, commanding a perfect silence and attention, planting the most unexperienced soldier, at, or nearest the guard-room; and he must be careful at posting a sentry, that he understands his orders, and the method of challenging, &c. and instil into them, that the security of the post depends upon their vigilance.

He

218 A MILITARY COURSE.

He is upon his relieve to examine the sentry boxes, and whatever belongs to the post that the sentry had in charge, and if he finds any thing missing, broke, or out of order, he is not to relieve him, until he has acquainted the officer of the guard.

If the corporal either relieves or posts a sentry irregular he will be broke for it.

He is never to go for orders without his firelock and duty roll; his arms advanced, when marching the relieve or a party, and when addressing an officer they are to be recovered.

He must shew a good example to the soldiers, and never drink or game with them, nor must he ever presume to strike them, when he can possibly confine them; they are in general to be treated with respect and good nature, and every pleasing method pursued to make them fond of *their King, their Country, and their Corps.*

The Corporal is to have an iron ramrod, with a worm at the end, a patch to make holes, and a cloaths brush for the use of the men of his Squad.

Form of return which each Non-commissioned officer commanding squads are to make to the eldest Serjeant of their respective companies on the evening, if possible, that they receive their mens billets, in order that he may make one out of the whole and deliver it to the officer commanding the company.

Return of the Mens Quarters, &c. of <i>A. B.</i> Squad.				
Mens Names.	Landlords Names.	Trades.	Streets.	Signs.
				<i>AB.</i> Corporal day of

Of the Choice and Duty of a Serjeant.

THE Serjeant is to be careful, sober, and honest, and exact in all his dealings; diligent, active, and resolute upon all duties, expert at his arms, and a good accomptant; a neatness in his dress, with a manly soldier-like appearance.

He is always to endeavour to be the first upon the parade or place appointed for their assembling, to rectify any thing amiss or out of order in their dress, arms, accoutrements, or ammunition, and that they are well sized in their ranks*, and to make every morning a report to the officer commanding the company; see form page 109.

He is to prevent drinking, gaming, swearing, or any other kind of immorality, either on guard or elsewhere among the soldiers, and to take particular care that the sentries challenge the rounds, &c. without confusion, or when negligence appears amongst those under his command, he should exert his authority over them; and insist upon an implicit obedience in order to reform them; nor is he to conceal from his officer any of their bad conduct; on the contrary, he is to report them, *by which he will be feared by the bad, and be beloved by the good.*

* The sizing of a company well adds greatly to its appearance; for which reason it is proper it should be well attended to: the common practice is, that the tallest men should be in the front rank; yet if a soldier has a fine person, a good face, and is remarkably well made, he should be put in the front in preference to one that is something taller and not so good a figure: each rank should be sized separately, placing the tallest on the flanks, and the lowest in the center.

He is not to advance any money to the private men without orders; and before they are accounted with for their stoppages and arrears, he is to return a state of all just debts that have come to his knowledge, in order that after the men are supplied with their full complement of necessaries, if a balance remain in their favor, it may be applied to discharge those just demands.

The Serjeant, who shall be employed to buy necessaries for the men, shall not make any profit or advantage thereby, except that of making up the linen, if made by his wife or daughter, and this to be absolutely at the choice of the men for whom it is bought, who shall be present at the buying, and see the money paid; nor shall he extort from the men under pretence of money advanced, since the officer who commands the company will supply what is wanting; and as an effectual stop to all proceedings of this kind, if any one shall make full and clear proof of the above mentioned fraud, he shall receive one guinea reward, and put in any other company he desires.

He must not go on party or furlough, without leaving whatever accounts of the company he may have by him, either with his officer or a Serjeant.

The Serjeant, if Pay-master Serjeant of the company, is to stop from the men for all repairs of arms and accoutrements, which can be made appear before a regimental court-martial to have been damaged, lost, or spoilt by their neglect: no man properly provided with necessaries should be stopped more than his arrears, except his necessaries are much worn, and he also indebted to his officer; in which case he is to be stopped six-pence weekly beside his arrears: if it is necessary to stop more, it must be by order of a court-martial, and then it is not to exceed half his pay, though the man should have made away with all his necessaries, which is too

often

often the case; and to avoid punishment, are sometimes so abandoned as to desert their colours: when he goes for orders, he is to have his arms, - duty, and size-roll, with pens, ink, and orderly book; and beside the usual small articles, he must carry a mould to cast bullets, and a ladle to melt lead in, a former to make cartridges, and a ream of brown paper.

Of the Choice of Drill Serjeants and Corporals.

THEIR merits must be well considered, and their qualifications duly weighed and examined.

They should be men remarkable for their expertness in performing every part of the manual exercise and firings, manœuvres, marchings, and wheelings; they should have a command of speech, and give their instructions with clearness and firmness; they should be mild in disposition, and free from moroseness and ill-nature, a stranger to hatred and a friend to the recruit; for other particulars see form page 174 to page 191.

Of the Choice of a Music Master, Drum and Fife Major.

THEY should be men whose regularity, sobriety, good conduct, and honesty can most strictly be depended upon; that are most remarkably clean and neat in their dress; that have an approved ear and taste for music, and a good method of teaching, without speaking harshly to the youth, or hurrying them on too fast.

They must take particular care that those under their command are properly and uniformly dressed, as they are to be answerable for their good appearance; nor are they ever to over-look any neglects or irregularities committed by them.

They

They must be very circumspect and exact in keeping their instruments of music in order, and that they practise three times a week under their respective masters.

No Musicians, Drummer or Fifer are to play or beat after tat-too, or before reveille beating, on pain of severe punishment, except by order of the Commanding officer.

They are to attend roll callings, and at all times when the regiment is under arms; they likewise are to join their respective companies in time of action, and assist the wounded, the orderly Drummers and Fifers excepted.

The master of the music should find out and practise the best adjudged pieces; the Fife-major those for his Fifes, and the Music-master and Fife-major must take care to be always provided with spare instruments, as also the Drum-major with skins and cats with nine tails.

Of the Choice and Duty of a Quarter-Master.

THE Quarter-master's post being of great consequence, becomes an object of importance; requiring one possessed of abilities, much judgment and information, for flagrant abuses seldom grow up at once.

He should be an honest careful officer, exact at his pen, and a ready accomptant; very well skilled in the detail of the battalion, and perfectly acquainted with every individual circumstance of its duty and finances.

In garrison, he is to be employed in seeing the barracks or quarters kept clean, and their arms properly hung up, and to receive all articles belonging to the viviers, infirmary, or hospital, and provide the camp equipage; and on all distributions of carriages, provisions, coals, wood, or any other firing, as also materials for work, he is to receive and distribute them according to order;

order; he must keep exact accounts, and return what is unnecessary or ordered, that the battalion may not be charged with what is missing; he must be very careful in inspecting the bread and provisions, that no unwholesome food be received, and no deliveries made but in just time.

He is also to take care that the pioneers in clearing away a passage for the corps, set up branches of trees, from fifty to one hundred yards, with leaves, furze, straw, grass, or hay fastened to them; and where there are any hollow ways which are narrow the pioneers must widen them, also fill up all holes, &c. which may prevent the cannon and baggage from moving on with the battalion.

As the pioneers and camp-colour men march under the command of the Quarter-master, he is not to suffer them to maraud or steal, and as it is a disgrace to the military profession, they deserve no more quarter than such men give to poor peasants, &c. Licentious men spread a plague instead of giving protection; and where terror and dissolution march before the camp, a thousand undone peasants, &c. follow; there are a great many things belonging to this employ that cannot be recited here and happen without rule; in which case, ancient custom and the rules of war must be followed; but as to some parts of his duty, see Quarter-master's book from page 128 to page 142.

The Quarter-master, though he should hold another commission, is to do no duty but that of Quarter-master.

Of the Quarter-Master Serjeants.

The Quarter-master Serjeant, being an assistant to the Quarter-master, should be duly qualified in every respect,

respect, as is before recited for him, and regulate all his actions by a strict regard and attention to his duty.

Of the Choice and Duty of the Serjeant Major,

HE should be a man of real merit, a complete Serjeant and a good scholar, sensible and agreeable in conversation, in order to attract the eye of the non-commissioned officers who are immediately under his command and are constantly employed together; he should be a person who discovered an early genius for discipline, and that had been taken notice of, for neglecting every other study but that; he must be ready at his pen, and expert in making out details and rosters, &c.

He is always to have by him printed furloughs and discharges, as also Company's books, with many spare leaves to add any additional standing orders that may be issued, and for which every officer that chuses one is to pay two shillings and six-pence; as also the non-commissioned officers or private men that go on furlough for their business, are to pay four-pence for their furlough, and the regiment the like sum for every discharge.

Rolter

Roster to regulate the Duty of the Private Men, when the Grenadiers and Light Infantry Companies are neither detached from their Corps or encamped, from the Day of _____ 17____

Companies.		Number of Men fit for Duty in each Company.																													
Colonel's	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Lieut. Colonel's	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Major's	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Grenadiers	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Light Infantry	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Capt.	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Capt.	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Capt.	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Capt.	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
Capt.	_____	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30

P

EXPLAN

EXPLANATION.

THE upper line of figures denotes the number of private in each company; twelve men being demanded for duty, begin with number one, Colonel's company, and so down; and then begin again under number two, and so on till you have counted twelve blank squares, then put twelve, which marks the endings in Major's company; those squares filled are overflows; tho' in some rosters that contain a number of figures the blanks there shew them, see pages 23 and 25.

Duty

Of the Choice and Duty of the Adjutant.

THE employment is of more consequence than is in general believed; it is however (through private interest) often intrusted to young gentlemen without experience and often without capacity, for this reason, the post should be filled with the most deserving subaltern, *without purchase*, as it requires a person possessed of abilities and integrity, with many more accomplishments; and happy is that officer who has acquired them; for he cannot have too many virtues, too much knowledge or experience; he should have an affability to gain the affections of the soldiers, and by the influence of example, occasion a perfect harmony to subsist among them.

It is not sufficient that he is master of all the tunes of the fife and sounds of the drum, the esponton, firelock, details, rosters, manœuvres; and discipline of the battalion; for though a readiness and expertness in all must be necessary for the necessities of war; yet *without health* to see them properly executed, I make no account of the Adjutant.

Beside the above, it is absolutely necessary to have the power of speech: "if he cannot give his orders with clearness and firmness, with perspicuity, in a tone that, while he tells the soldiers what they are to do, at the same time inspires them with courage and a willingness to do it, such person will, although his orders should be good in themselves, find them unconfidentially and without spirit obeyed. For further instructions see Adjutant's book from page 123 to 128.

Of the Surgeon and his Mate, see Page 146.

of

Of the Chaplain, his Attendance, &c.

A STRICT attendance on his respective duties should be insisted on; as also a constant and regular performance of divine service, whether in quarters, garrison, or camp, as the common men are in general too ignorant of religious matters and forms.

He should use his endeavours to have them punctual in attending on public worship and mark their conduct; admonish or censure those who behave indecently or irreverent, as by making them better men, you make them better soldiers*.

The practice of allowing the duty to be done by deputy is scandalous, as they care not how their offices are filled by others; if they make an advantageous bargain, their main point is, not who will serve them best, but who will serve them cheapest.

When I had the command of a regiment of foot for some months, there was no chaplain or deputy provided, I therefore appointed one at the rate of 4*l.* per annum,

* The character of Gustavus shines forth with lustre in this point of view: "He showed an exemplary attention to the duties of religion, and enforced a regard to sacred obligations upon all under his command; he repressed with equal care, blasphemy, drunkenness, and lewdness in his army, as he did transgressions of military discipline: he was the companion of all their fatigues and dangers, and submitted with cheerfulness himself to the restraints he imposed on others. It is no wonder that an army under such conduct was crowned with success, with their swords in one hand and their Bibles in another, and acting under the influence of this motto upon their standards, 'If God be for us, who can be against us,' " what could they fear? resolution, patience, and every military virtue may be expected from those whose minds are stayed on God."

as I thought it of the utmost importance of attending to the duties of devotion—but this did not please!

On the other hand; I have a regard for the honor of the clergy, and am sensible how necessary a proper appearance is to support its character with respect and dignity; and how inadequate the pay is to the figure they should maintain; beside as they are not in the road for preferment as the officers of the corps are, I therefore with all due submission, would appoint him pay-master to the regiment, being less exposed to danger or liable to be sent on command, and for which consideration he should be obliged to reside constantly with his corps; and it would also be highly commendable in him if he would pay some attention to the conduct of a regimental school, and appoint a non-commissioned officer to act as master, who is capable of teaching reading, writing, and arithmetick, by whom soldiers and their children should be carefully instructed, and a place should be fixed upon for that purpose.

Of the Choice and Conduct of an Ensign.

I AM sorry to say, that most parents educate their sons in a profession according to their own inclination, without paying the least regard to what nature designed them for.

Professions merely mechanical, I am sensible, may be accomplished by application and exercise; but there are others which require sound sense, abilities, and courage: and to succeed in arts and sciences, it is absolutely necessary that nature has furnished them with particular talents, which parents ought to consider, *as appearances may mislead*, and the most fatal effects flow from a choice void of attention to them; from whence it happens, that we see one a parson who would have made a deserving officer,

officer, another serving in the army who would have cut a figure in the law.

The idea which I have formed to myself of the qualifications for an officer are, first, courage; secondly, a military turn; thirdly, a good constitution; fourthly, a regular good conduct and a serious application; for to follow the best means is the most likely way to arrive at the proposed end; so that informing the youth, the first object of attention should be to make them good men, just in all their actions, and benevolent members of the universal society of mankind; and then to apply their talents to those objects of pursuits that will render them most serviceable in support of their own conduct and the duty of their corps.

From sixteen to nineteen years of age is the best time for young gentlemen to come into the service, and it is absolutely necessary that they have acquired a knowledge of French, Mathematicks, Fortification, and Drawing; and the parents who wish to see their children flourish and rise to preferment should instil into their hearts, that vice of every denomination is not only contrary to true sentiments of honour, but even valour, which ought to distinguish the soldier: bad women and drunkenness weaken the mind, destroy the constitution, and soften courage; if the understanding loses its vivacity, and the body its vigour, where shall we find the soldier?

There are two fashionable vices, which I must warn them against: first, is gaming, which is big with the loss of time, character, and fortune, the ruin of families, defrauding of creditors; and often the loss of commission: the second, profane cursing and swearing, which is so wicked and ungentleman-like, that I most religiously recommend to all good christians to avoid the company of swearers.

With respect to the officers of your corps, esteem them as your brothers engaged in the same cause, and exposed to the same climates, fatigues, and dangers with yourself, and fighting under the same banner; cultivate affection for them, and do every act of friendship in your power.

To superior officers pay the utmost respect, and obey their orders with alacrity; you cannot expect to support authority over your inferiors, if you neglect or counteract the commands of your superiors; nor can you receive instructions or advice from experienced officers with too much politeness and docility, as it opens the understanding and excites an application concerning our moral and military duties.

They will likewise associate with those nearest their own age and rank, and they must beware of forming intimacies with them that are too opinionated or quarrelsome; such men are hateful to society, and often bring themselves into difficulties which a good man would avoid: let your choice be confined to a few, and let those be persons whose understandings are cultivated by a knowledge with the best military authors, and whose line of conduct is irreproachable and exemplary: to your brother officers be civil and obliging, and above all things be careful of *forfeiting your Word of Honour, or breaking your Promise, even in Trifles*. Nothing is more dangerous than to enter into the spirit of party; they lose themselves the moment they adopt it.

If with whom you argue grow warm, drop the subject rather than hazard a duel or give uneasiness to company; from matters of little consequence, sometimes have arisen the most disagreeable disputes, which have ended with loss of reputation—nay life itself.

When on guard, party, or other duty with your superior officers, attend to their conduct and the precautions

tions taken by them, that you may be able to do the same when your duty may demand it; it is neither prudent to expose your person out of punctilio, nor to evade a post of danger; life is of more consequence than grimace, and less than reputation; it is worth living to make an honourable exit; and is more glorious to fall in the field, than to come off with a failure of duty.

The first thing necessary for a young officer to learn, in order to move with grace and exactness, is the military step, which cannot be acquired but by practice; the use of the firelock in every position is their next consideration; then the salutes of the fuzee and espointon, with the different facings practised by those weapons; and as for the other parts of necessary duties the Adjutant will instruct you in, and present you with one of the companies book of standing orders, forms, &c. and for your farther information, I shall enter an extract taken from Lochee's Essay on Military Education:

“In most manual arts, and in some sciences, a stated course of several years is allotted for the instruction of students when theory and practice mutually contribute to their improvements, and he will be found the greatest proficient, who has established his practice on the most accurate and best digested theory; and though in the effusions of that esteem which is always felt for eminent talents, it may be said, that a man is born an orator, a poet, a painter, and even a soldier; yet it is certain, that correctness and great mastery are derived, not from nature but art, not from genius but study.

It is the observation of Folard, that “war is a science for the ingenious, and a calling only for the ignorant;” but as a science, it cannot possibly be acquired without a continual study and application of the best formed rules and precepts, a combination of all possible events in their minutest complications, and conclusions deduced therefrom
and

and treasured up in the mind ready for service; whereas in practice alone, though enlarged by the experience of many campaigns, the mind must remain blind to the event of numberless operations, always liable to be disconcerted by the capricious turns of fortune."

"But, between theory and practice, when placed in competition, let history determine which has the superior excellence, and history has given many examples of great generals suddenly produced from the fruitful source of antierior study, but none who left their knowledge to be acquired solely by practice. Alexander, Cyrus, Pyrrhus, Scipio, and many more stepped at once from theory to the chief command of great armies, and almost as soon as they appeared were known in the greatest characters of commanders and victors: that the greatest success and the most useful instructions may arise solely from the operations of the mind on a rational and well digested knowledge acquired by study, the examples of Zisca, General of the Hussites, and of Count Pagan, are incontrovertible proofs; both in the prime of life furnished the most important lessons in the art of war, the one by victories, and the other by systems of fortification; both were blind, and therefore had theory chiefly for their guide; instances like these, even in barbarous times, must have evinced the superiority of theory over practice, when placed in a comparative view.

Of the Lieutenants.

HE in the Captain's absence is to consider the trust and confidence reposed in him, and that he is not only answerable to the service, *but to himself also*, for the care and management of his company; nor is it at his choice to exchange any man from it but by leave of the commanding officer of the corps.

He

He should be very attentive that the Serjeants and Corporals support a proper authority over the private men; but then let it be carried with decency and good order, and then they will obey and esteem him.

He must pay a particular attention to the arms, accoutrements, ammunition, cloaths, necessaries, and dress of the non-commissioned officers and private men; in short to every circumstance which may contribute to their appearance and health, &c. and oblige the Pay-master Serjeant every market day to give him a return, after which he should examine what is bought and see if it is conformable to it, see page 112.

He should visit the sick, to see that they are properly attended and well taken care of; attend roll calling every morning, and oblige one of the non-commissioned officers to give him a report (see page 109) that he may confine or redress all complaints with readiness and exactness.

“ There is nothing so necessary or just as that the Lieutenant should act his own part, and endeavour to acquire a knowledge of the commission above him; but that prying disposition, common to all mankind, is apt to occasion some omission in what he ought to do, while he employs himself in examining the conduct of his superior; and at last, by playing the Commanding officer, to forget he is Lieutenant: this is not meant to check any officer's genius, even of the most inferior rank, or to hinder his searches into the scientific parts of war; but only to prevent his attention being diverted from the most strict execution of his duty, *by entertaining an opinion, that it is trifling and insignificant.*”

Of the Captain.

TO gain the love and esteem of his men should be his first object, and to be able to command them properly,

perly, he ought first to know them, and to have seen them in different situations; to watch their most minute behaviour and to distinguish their talents.

He should be present when they are accounted with for their arrears and stoppages; visit them often when sick, and see them properly taken care of, and reward such as are exact and well behaved.

When the Major is absent, the eldest Captain present is to fill his post; he ought, therefore, to be well acquainted with the strength and detail of the corps, have a perfect knowledge of the exercise and all manœuvres; the well disposing of any command he may be intrusted with, a small post advantageously thrown up will make him appear capable of more important matters; if employed in a siege and should command a party of workmen, endeavour to encourage them by example, and always appear first: the more exalted the station, the more requisite the example to inspire the irresolute with firmness and the timorous with fortitude: in the day of battle, his calm intrepidity should excite a confidence in his men: an intrepid courage, conducted by reason, is the most faithful companion of a soldier amongst the dangers his profession exposes him to.

He should prevent, as much as possible, the inconveniencies and ill consequences produced by soldiers marrying women unfit for them; as abandoned ones frequently occasion quarrels, drunkenness, diseases, and desertions; involve their husbands in debt, and are too often the ruin and destruction of them; therefore, he should insist upon the non-commissioned officers having a watchfull eye over them, in order to prevent them entering into such engagements, without first having obtained their Commanding officer's leave, as such marriages are a reflection upon their corps and a detriment to his Majesty's service.

IF

If the Captain is going from the regiment, the company's arms, accoutrements, cloaths, and necessaries should be inspected before the officer who is to receive the command of it, that he may not plead for an excuse, should the companies appearance, &c. be found fault with, that he received it so; as the Captain is to receive from him a return of the state he left it in.

He must be strict in putting in execution the articles of war against swearing; the penalty for which is one shilling, beside further punishment for the second offence; the soldiers therefore should be cautioned to break themselves of a custom which is so wicked and unsoldier-like.

Of the Major.

THE Major should be possessed of many accomplishments; "for he who is in certain cases to point out to others their duty, who is sometimes to dissipate their fears, rouse their courage, shew advantages or lessen unfavourable appearances, should have the power of speech; if he has not, he himself may meet with disgrace where he might have found triumph, and his men be beat where he might have conquered; innumerable instances might be brought to prove the truth of this assertion."

He should be active, vigilant, and well acquainted with every circumstance respecting the battalion, that it should not be detached out of roster, or officers sent on command out of turn; he should have a perfect knowledge of the exercise and all manœuvres: as the multiplicity of details which he is charged with requires the utmost attention, he should be master of the attack and defence of fortified places, as sometimes a command of that kind may fall upon him.

When

When the battalion is under arms; or where the good of the service is concerned, as Major he ought to remember, that he is answerable for the good order and discipline of it; and therefore should oblige every officer to a strict performance of every part.

This post should be filled with men of abilities, who are capable to command and attract respect, and the more he shews to his superiors, the more he will receive from his inferiors; so that he who would implant the respect due to him in the breast of his officer, cannot proceed on a better method to establish subordination, than by shewing a proper deference to those in rank above him.

As the duty of Colonel and Lieutenant-colonel are so nearly connected together, to avoid repetitions I shall proceed to the Colonel.

Of the Colonel.

THE Colonel should be endowed with many good qualities, as conception to comprehend easily what he is to do; health for enabling him to endure the fatigues of war; judgment to execute and presence of mind to secure the advantages arising from success, or in preventing of an unfortunate event*; he should be capable of manœuvring

* "All officers know, that in any event of danger, the soldier always look at their officers, their commanding one in particular, if they have confidence in him, to see how he feels himself, whether he is unperplexed and seems to be easy; and from his looks they will often surmise good or bad success, and from his appearance and actions often spring assurance and victory, dismay or defeat: actions or appearances of officers should never tend therefore to give soldiers room to doubt, or to form unfavourable conjectures; what they see of the enemy cannot

covering the battalion, so as to seize the advantage of that favourable moment which happens in many actions, and which is capable of assuring success; and as obedience and discipline is one of the first means of obtaining victory, he should strictly enforce it by an exact attention to every circumstance; when he punishes, he should make the offenders sensible, that it is not the man, but the crime he abhors.

He should administer justice with the greatest disinterestedness; for which purpose when vacancies fall, his interest, as their patron and benefactor, should be exerted to promote the succession of all officers in rotation, except those whose incapacity or bad conduct may render them unworthy of favour; such should be obliged to quit the corps; by this you will find an easy method to establish harmony and unanimity, without which the service can never be well carried on.

The Colonel is uncontrollable in his command, especially when he makes a good use of it; the officers (at least those worthy of the name) will regard him as their

cannot be prevented, but they should neither see, hear, or understand any bad omens from their own side: if they ever see too much, means, if possible, should be made use of to make them distrust and forget their own fight, and see only through the medium of their Commanding officer's words and inclinations. Animation, like electricity, is communicative, is catching; and the officer who is animated himself will inspire others."

"All history, particularly the ancient, presents numberless examples of armies, of parts of armies, of small bodies of soldiers extricating themselves from dangerous and alarming situations through the exhortations of their chiefs; and when any chief directs the method of escape, or shews the road to victory by a few words; and with his person, if necessary, sets the example of actual execution, armies and parts of armies in general will escape, and will conquer."

brother,

brother, and the men look on him as their father; he will be obeyed with pleasure and resignation by both, and the business of the regiment conducted with ease and regularity, and he will gain more credit by politely insisting on a proper performance of duty, than by winking at idleness and crimes.

What might not the corps expect from the Commanding officer, who is in himself a man of zeal for the service and a soldier of vigilance, worth, and fortitude; encouraging religion and constantly attending on divine service, and having it duly performed by the Chaplain of the regiment, for nothing is observed to make them do their duty so exactly, as believing they please the Almighty in doing it; this opinion rivetted in their hearts and minds—what will not men do, when regulated by order and discipline?

Having gone through the several ranks from the soldier to the Colonel, I shall conclude this course upon battles and of fortune; and in the next shall begin with such standing orders for the battalion that have not come under the before recited articles.

Of BATTLES.

THE prudent officer sinks not under misfortune; to suppose all lost, is the way to lose all: when fortune is at a low ebb, he expects she will flow, or when she frowns, he expects she will again smile: the gallant Duke of Weymar received a severe check from the imperialists, and though his troops were overthrown, his head and heart were not conquered; but his courage rose with his misfortune; his pulse beat higher, and he resolved the next day to wipe off the disgrace of the former with the blood of the victorious: he kept his resolution and gained an intire victory. Victorious lost himself by winning a

6

battle;

battle, his reason being dismounted, his prudence forsook him and he left the officer behind, and exulting in his success led him beyond the bounds of caution; so that at the next engagement he lost his laurels: never were men disposed of with less judgment, or took up more disadvantageous ground; one wing had no succour, the cavalry no support to the infantry, or the infantry to them.

Of FORTUNE.

FORTUNE is known to be never steady to her friends, nor implacable to her enemies, never constant to the same situation, nor true to the same interest; she is now on this side, now on that, but steadfast to neither, and alike suspected by all: a mixture of good and bad events usually succeed, now victory perches on your standard, anon flies over to the enemy; sometimes you will conquer, and sometimes be overcome; so that an officer moves on in a circle of prosperity and adversity, but his regulated confidence is not elated by the one, nor is his wary courage depressed by the other; he is neither presuming nor desponding, but in one state, apprehensive of a check, and in the other hope of an advantage.

A

MILITARY COURSE.

S E V E N T H P A R T.

Standing Orders for a Battalion.

THE Chaplain to read prayers every morning when the battalion is encamped; to visit the sick every day, and perform the burial service at the interment of the dead.

The Surgeon or Mate to attend at all punishments, morning and evening roll callings, and at all times when the battalion is under arms to sign a return of the sick and lame of each company, and to visit them twice a day: if any women in the corps who have the venereal complaint, and do not immediately make it known to the Surgeon or Mate, shall upon the first discovery of it be drummed out with infamy, and never after to be suffered to be with the battalion.

The Pay-master to settle the non-effective account with the agent by letter every two months, and the agent to transmit an account of what reimbursements have been made during that time, and what balance remains, that the accounts may be compared together and settled at the stated time agreeable to warrant, page 78.

The

The Quarter-master is frequently to visit the mens quarters, that he may be informed of their behaviour and know in what manner they diet; and the persons names that entertain such men who do not eat in those quarters; by this method of inquiry, it is to be hoped they will behave themselves so regular in their billets, that those who would be glad to lodge a complaint against them may be disappointed, and the peaceable, honest subject freed from abuse. *There is nothing his Majesty King GEORGE the Third is so particularly displeas'd with, as the irregularity of men in their quarters, or on the march.*

The Quarter-master is to make a weekly report of the conduct and behaviour of the pioneers, camp-colourmen, bas-men, and forage, as also one of page 134, and the day after the battalion comes to a new camp, to dress and streighten the lines.

The Adjutant to see all guards and detachments before they march off, that their arms are clean and well flinted, their ammunition and accoutrements, &c. in perfect good order; he is to keep an exact detail of duties, and of detachments, court-martials, and of soldiers deserted, dead, discharged, entertained, and on furlough, &c. and every morning he is to give the Commanding-officer a report, see page 125.

No officer when with the battalion to appear in any other dress than his uniform, and when for guard, detachment, marching, or field days, to have their hair queued, fash, gorgeat, fusée, or espontoon, and regimental boots: the non-commissioned officers and private men to plat and tuck up their hair, to be fully accoutred, and in black linen gaiters, tops, and regimental garters and buckles.

When the Colonel is absent from the battalion, the officer commanding is to send him, on the first day of

Q 2

every

every month; a monthly return, as also those of pages 129 and 133.

An officer of a company to march the men to church every Sunday morning, and are to remain there during the time of divine service: if any non-commissioned officer or private man absents himself from church, or leave it before service is over, he shall pay and suffer the penalties expressed in the articles of war.

All returns demanded from the companies to be signed by the officer commanding them; and they are desired to examine them with the greatest attention, that they may not sign an improper one by mistake; and when any thing extraordinary happens that should be reported, one of the officers of the company is immediately to acquaint the Commanding-officer.

The articles of war and standing orders to be read every two months; after which the non-commissioned officers and private men are to be accounted with for their arrears and stoppages, and the balance due to them to be paid by the Commanding-officers of companies, after deducting what has been advanced them to buy necessaries: each man is to sign his account.

The young officers to be kept at head quarters till made acquainted with the nature of their duty, to exercise the guards, and to attend all courts-martial for the space of six months, in order to obtain a knowledge of their institutions, their laws, their powers and proceedings, see page 169.

Proceedings of all regimental courts-martial to be entered in the general book according to page 103.

All men confined for crimes cognizable by a regimental court-martial to be tried within forty-eight hours of their confinement.

The

The officers and non-commissioned officers are never to enter into altercation with any men they meet off duty that are in liquor, much less strike them; because many instances may be produced wherein ~~men~~ from the smallest provocations have forfeited their lives while drunk: the punishment for drunkenness alone is fourteen days confinement in the black hole.

The Captains, or officers commanding companies, are to use their best endeavours to distinguish the men who have the best capacities, and are most honest, diligent, and obedient, that the battalion may be supplied with good non-commissioned officers.

The Commanding-officers of companies are always to keep a copy of their muster-rolls, that they may at any time be referred to; and they are never to carry them away when they leave their companies for any time: the same to be done with such returns as are necessary to be preserved.

When any casualties happen in a company, the Paymaster Serjeant must take care to preserve the regimentals, that the succeeding recruit may be clothed in the like manner with his brother soldier.

The battalion will be careful to try the ammunition as it is delivered to them, that they may be sure it fits the calibar of the barrel.

No man to be discharged who is fit for service, but upon procuring two good men, or paying fifteen guineas to the stock purse.

When it happens that one company shall receive a man from another to be promoted, the company that receives him shall give the choice of his, the grenadier and light infantry companies, pioneers, gunners, bas-men, camp-colour men, and officers servants excepted.

The recruiting parties to consist of one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, and one private man, and the Serjeant is to take an exact measure of the standard, that his officer may not act contrary to his instructions, see page 156.

No recruit is to be servant to an officer or excused from mounting guard, nor allowed to work in the intervals of duty, till he has been twelve months in the battalion.

All non-commissioned officers and private men that desert are to be tried by a general court-martial, see page 165.

When an officer desires leave of absence, if he has not the command of a company, he must apply to the officer commanding it, and having got his consent, then to the officer commanding the battalion, and having obtained his leave, must then acquaint the Adjutant for what time, and where he may be wrote to.

Orderly hour at ten o'clock at the orderly room or tent, where the Serjeant-major, Quarter-master Serjeant, with a Serjeant and Corporal of each company, Drum-major, Fife-major, and Master of the Music are to attend for orders*.

No officer is to change his guard, or other duty but by leave of the Commanding-officer, and then he must inform the Adjutant.

No non-commissioned officer is ever to change any duty he may be ordered upon, without first obtaining the consent of the officer commanding the company he belongs to, and afterwards the consent of the Commanding-officer of the battalion; nor are they to excuse any man from exercise or other duty.

* An orderly Serjeant daily to attend on the Commanding-officer.

When

When any non-commissioned officer or private man obtains a furlough, it is to be registered in the company's book; and whoever stays away longer than his leave of absence without just cause, that time he has overstayed is to be specified in the book, that such men may be refused a furlough upon any future occasion: they are likewise to be told, that whoever makes an ill use of his officer's indulgence may expect to be punished at his return.

No non-commissioned officer or private man will be granted a furlough that neglects to apply to the Commanding-officer of the company he belongs to; nor will that or any other indulgence be granted but at their request; and when they return to the battalion that had leave of absence for any time, one of the officers of that company is to give the furlough to the Commanding-officer.

All officers commanding detachments are, upon their arrival at their destined post, to make a report of all extraordinary accidents or deficiencies to the Commanding-officer.

An officer or non-commissioned officer commanding a detachment upon any kind of duty is to be answerable for the behaviour of his men, or if he neglects to confine such as are guilty of crimes, or endeavours to conceal them, they will be brought to a court-martial for such unfoldier-like conduct.

When the regiment is entire, a picquet guard, consisting of one Captain, two Subalterns, two Serjeants, two Corporals, two Drummers, two Fifers, and fifty private men, besides all other usual guards, is to mount. The Subalterns are to be sent on visiting rounds: where no less than four companies are quartered, a guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private men, must be mounted, with a picquet of one Subaltern, one Ser-

jeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, one Fifer, and twenty-four private men; where three companies are quartered, the guard must consist of one Serjeant, one Corporal, twelve private men, and an orderly officer for the day; but where less than three companies are in quarters, a guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private men, and an officer to stay in garrison or quarters. When any of the above guards are mounted, they are to hold themselves in readiness for all requisite occasions, and not only keep good order and regularity among themselves, but grant such assistance to authorized magistrates as demand military aid; the magistrates, however, remaining with the party: the demand must be in writing, and signed.

When the regiment is ordered into cantonments, the Commanding-officer will dispose of the companies in such manner as he shall judge most beneficial to his Majesty's service, paying a particular attention to appoint an officer to command each whose conduct may be depended upon: the colours, Chaplain, Pay-master, Surgeon, Adjutant, Quarter-master, Serjeant-major, Quarter-master Serjeant, Drill-serjeant, Corporal, and all the recruits, Drum-major, Fife-major, the Serjeant or Corporal appointed to act as school-master, with the Music and Fifers, are all to be kept at head-quarters; when seven companies are ordered to march, the Lieutenant-colonel, with the colours, Staff-officers, Music, &c. should march with them; a Major should command four companies, and a Captain may march with either three companies or one; a Lieutenant with one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, one Fifer, and twenty-seven private men; an Ensign with one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, one Fifer, and twenty-one men; a Serjeant from twelve to fifteen; and a Corporal from four to nine. The Surgeon must attend the Field-officers march, and his mate that of one

or

or more companies; but, notwithstanding the foregoing regulations, they are obliged sometimes to march with more, and sometimes with less, as occasion requires; each company to be provided with and carry as follows: an ammunition box to contain thirty-six rounds of powder and ball, with two good flints for each man, which is not to be used but in case of necessity; three locks, two dozen screw pins, four pans, six iron ram-rods.

The battalion, or any part of it, must behave with great regularity on the march, and before they march into any village, town, or garrison, an officer to be sent forward; and if troops are there, he must wait upon the Commanding-officer for leave for to march in: when they arrive at their quarters, the credit of the companies to be cried down, place of parade appointed, the guards to be mounted, and the colours to be lodged in form at the Commanding-officer's quarters, and a sentry posted over them: the alarm-posts to be fixed, and the necessary precautions to be given the men against whoring, drinking, gaming, and rioting; upon beating to arms, all officers and soldiers who are not upon duty, to repair with their arms to their alarm-posts; the picquet-guard will assemble where the colours are lodged: if the alarm is occasioned by fire, the pioneers are to assemble with them, with their axe and saw only: the Commanding-officer will give all such necessary orders as the present exigency may require for securing the effects of the unhappy sufferers.

The Commanding-officers at the several cantonments, forts, or garrisons will see that the non-commissioned officers and private men are regular in their attendance on divine service; and it is desired they will do all in their power to abolish drunkenness and swearing from amongst them, at least that they represent the infamy of such vices, and punish the offenders by a court-martial.

That

That the officers commanding on the march suffer no man to quit his rank in order to fall into the rear for his conveniency, until he shall have left his firelock to be carried by his comrade till his return; nor when marching in an enclosed country, is any one to slip into a bye path or any other tract but where the companies march; nor is the Commanding-officer to suffer any man to be above one mile from their quarters without leave; nor are they to drain ponds, fish, shoot, or destroy rabbits, or go in search of any kind of game whatever; nor are they to cut trees, climb over hedges, ditches, or break down fences, so as to give the least umbrage to any person: whatever man disobey any part of the above orders is to be confined and tried for disobedience of it.

The non-commissioned officers of the several squads, after having purchased provisions, are to make a return to the Pay-master Serjeant of their respective companies, and he is to make one out of the whole as in page 112, to be given to the officer commanding his company; as to messing, &c. see page 162.

A subaltern officer is to visit the barracks, messes, and regimental infirmary every day at twelve o'clock, and to report the state of them, as in page 113. If billeted in Great Britain or Ireland, a subaltern of a company is to visit their respective mens quarters every pay-day, and to report to their Captains; and if any thing is wrong, the Captain or officer commanding the company is desired to make it known to the Commanding-officer.

The eldest Serjeant of each company are, the day after the companies receive fresh billets, to give a return to the officer commanding his company, see page 218.

An officer of a company to attend the morning roll calling: when the troop beats, the companies will turn out; then the Serjeants or Corporals of the different squads will

will make an exact inspection; after which an officer is to inspect them, and, if he finds the Serjeant or Corporal has not made him an exact report, he is to confine him: after the officers have made their inspection, the eldest officer on the spot should review them, and if he finds any man not according to the order of the battalion, the officer who makes the report must be answerable for it, as it is expected that he examined every one particularly: a morning report must be signed by the officer of the company who inspected them; and all extraordinary that happened in the preceding twenty-four hours must be inserted, see page 109.

No officer to quit his post during the times the guards are relieving, to walk or talk to each other, except at the time the officer of the old guard is giving up the charge of his to the officer of the new guard; the men to stand steady and silent, and if any man lift his hand to make a motion but what he is ordered to do, his name to be given to the Adjutant; the officer of the guard is to be answerable for the men on duty with him. While the guards are relieving, if any person comes near who is entitled to a compliment, the eldest officer of both guards is to give the word of command; the dismounting officer to give a report to the Commanding-officer, and at the same time to whisper the parole in his ear; the officer next for guard to be on the parade in readiness to supply the place of an officer, who, by sickness or otherwise, cannot do his duty.

The soldiers who wait upon officers are to mount guard and to do duty whenever their masters do.

A Serjeant or Corporal who brings a soldier drunk to the parade for duty, knowing him to be so, is immediately to be confined, together with the drunken man, in order to their being both punished as so scandalous and unsoldier-like custom deserves.

Any

Any Serjeant upon guard that suffers a prisoner to get drunk * shall be brought to a court-martial; and if ever prisoners shall be brought in that condition to their trial, the court-martial are desired to inquire whether the Serjeant or guard is in fault, and to confine the offender.

Serjeants and Corporals sent on command are strictly ordered, on their arrival at quarters, after the men have received their billets and refreshed themselves, to see that they pull off their gaiters and appear dressed in every respect as at their battalion:

No Serjeant, Corporal, Drummer, Fifer, Musician, or soldier to appear in the barrack yard, or quarters, without their hair well platted and tucked up, shoes well blacked, stockings clean, black gaiters, buckles bright, and cloaths in good order.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each company to be in the way to receive any orders that may be given, and to attend the parade at the dismounting of guards, to take the ammunition from the men, and to see them draw their arms if loaded.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each company to attend the recruits and awkward men, when they parade for exercise, to see they are properly dressed, arms and accoutrements well put on, and in perfect good order.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each company to go round the barracks or quarters of their companies, as soon as

* I once knew an instance of a prisoner, who, to damp the pain of his punishment, was brought intoxicated to the halberts; he was therefore returned back to the guard room, but in a short time after he died, from the violent effects of drinking. Had he received his punishment which he most justly deserved, it is probable designing persons might have imputed his death to that.

the

the tattoo has beat, and report any men that are absent; and every morning before troop beating to see that their arms and accoutrements are properly hung up, beds well turned up, and the rooms, stairs, and galleries clean swept.

* All Serjeants and Corporals are to confine any Drummer, Fifer, Musician, or soldier, who may be gaming; which they are ordered never to be guilty of, and if found out will be punished for disobedience of orders.

All Serjeants and Corporals are to confine any Drummer, Fifer, Musician, or soldier they meet drunk or disorderly.

No Serjeant or Corporal shall sell any kind of liquors on any pretence whatever; the Commanding-officer of a company is not to pay any debt the men may contract on that account.

No soldier's wife is to fettle or sell liquor without permission, and leave will be granted to such as are particularly recommended by the Commanding-officers of companies.

If any Serjeant or Corporal drinks with the soldiers, drummers, or fifers, or conceals from his officer any indecent or unsoldier-like behaviour among them, he will be reduced for it.

That no sutler offer to harbour any body in the battalion without the Major's leave, who is to be very exact in examining who they are, and endeavour to get security for their fidelity.

The Corporals to be careful to warn the men for exercise and all other duties; and the first man that absents himself (sickness and leave of absence excepted) either from exercise or other duty, shall be confined and tried for disobedience of orders; and any Corporal who neglects to warn the men, when he received orders for that purpose, shall be reduced.

The

The orderly Corporals to give in a return of the sick and lame every morning to the Surgeon or his mate.

All men are to retire to their barrack or quarters whenever there is any mob, bull-baiting or foot-ball matches, on pain of being confined for disobedience of orders.

Any man convicted of selling his cloaths, necessaries, arms, accoutrements, powder, ball, or ammunition bread, to be punished with the utmost severity.

Whoever forces a safe-guard is to suffer death by the articles of war.

Any men who fire their pieces in the air without orders, or occasion false alarms by drawing swords, beating of drums, founding of trumpets, or fifes, or by any other means whatever, if in Great Britain or Ireland, shall be most severely punished, and if in foreign parts, to be tried by a general court-martial.

No man drunk on guard, party, duty, or under arms is to expect to be shewn the least lenity.

When pieces cannot be drawn, an officer to assemble the men and to see them fire together in a safe place.

When any thing is lost, stolen, or spoilt on guard, the whole men of the guard shall pay for it, and the loser be sent to the black hole for fourteen days.

No soldier is to make use of his bayonet to turn the cock screw of his lock, or otherways abuse that weapon.

As each soldier's firelock is properly numbered, so that every man may know his own; therefore, no man is, upon any account whatever, to put any private mark upon it.

No soldier to take his arms or accoutrements out of his barrack, quarters, or tent, unless for duty, or to learn his exercise, without leave from an officer.

Whatever man's firelock shall mis fire twice together, or be defective in any part of it, the man to whom it belongs

belongs that neglects to report it to his officer, will be sent to the drill for a month, and make good the duty he misses for the time.

Any man that is ordered to the drill, and does not go, shall be sent to the black hole for forty-eight hours; for the second neglect one week; for the third to be tried by a court-martial.

No man returned in the sick list to go out of his barrack or quarters without leave; if well enough, he is expected to appear in every respect dressed according to the order of the battalion.

Any man who presumes to cut off his hair, except certified by the Surgeon or mate, shall be confined for disobedience of orders.

No foldier will be allowed to work without particular leave of the Commanding-officer of his company, and their name to be given to the Adjutant, and the men so indulged are not to work in their uniform; they are also to provide a coarse shirt or two to preserve their better linen, but no check shirts are to be bought; and the men that have the care of the bas-horses are to be provided with frocks and coarse shirts.

If any of the men discover a maligner, or one of those scoundrels that shun duty and danger from cowardice, they are to inform the Commanding-officer of their company, that such characters may be properly distinguished by the name of coward, and dealt with accordingly.

On firing the field-pieces two rounds, the companies are to repair to their colours, which in camp, is always to be their alarm^tpost.

All holes in the front of the camp to be filled up, and none to be dug on pain of punishment.

All houses of office to be filled up and new ones to be made.

All

All green fruit brought to the camp to be destroyed.

All vagrants to be sent out of camp.

No soldier to be suffered to lie in the tents or huts in the rear.

Any soldier taken out of camp, without a pass in writing from the Commanding-officer of the battalion, or without an officer or non-commissioned officer is with them, will be tried for his life.

All soldiers, grooms, or followers of the battalion, that sell or buy forage without leave of the Commanding-officer will be punished without mercy.

No more than one grand futler and five petty will be allowed, and any futler who refuses to change the men's money, or ask a reward, shall be drummed out of the camp.

That all futlers, butchers, &c. take care to bury their garbage and filth at the place appointed by the Quarter-master.

The Major to inspect the bas and futler's horses, and if any are glandered to have them immediately killed.

If any bad bread is delivered to the battalion, it is to be complained of at the time of delivery, and no complaints to be made afterwards.

When the battalion sends for bread, straw, wood, forage, water, &c. or to the market for provision, the men are to be regularly paraded and marched by a subaltern officer, to the place of delivery, beside the Quarter-master or his serjeant: the officer is to take care that the men of the different companies receive in their turns, and then to march them back again in order.

An officer of a company to visit the men's kettles and messes at a regular hour every day, and to take particular care that they dress flesh, with their vegetables;
and

and to report to the Commanding-officer of their own company.

Any officer who sends his baggage before the march of the battalion, or out of its proper place without leave, will be tried by a court-martial for disobedience of orders.

When the battalion has formed on its ground of encampment, the quarter and rear guards are to be mounted, and the picquet to be drawn up before the center of the battalion; then the colours are to be planted, the men to lodge their arms and pitch the tents: the parade and streets of the camp to be cleaned every morning, and the tents to be opened when the weather permits; the best straw to be dried, and the bad to be burnt; fresh earth when necessary to be thrown on the floor of the tents, in order to destroy the vermin.

No Drummer, Fifer, or Musician to practise before the quarter and rear guards are relieved, or after retreat beating.

If a General should happen to pass in the rear of the quarter or rear guard, no notice to be taken of him.

The grenadier and light-infantry companies to do no other duty than in camp, but to hold themselves in constant readiness to march.

When the troop beats the roll of each company to be called in their respective streets, as also at retreat beating.

The quarter and rear guard to mount at troop beating every morning, and the picquet guard at retreat beating, see page 121, and the subalterns are to be sent visiting round, and the field officer to go grand rounds*.

R

As

* *Method of going and receiving the Rounds in Camp.*

The Field-officer is to be escorted by a Serjeant and four men, with a drummer to carry the lanthorn. Every sentry

is

As the safety of the battalion depends in a great measure on the vigilance of the guards and sentries, if any suffer themselves to be surprized on their post, they will be tried by a general court-martial.

When the Commanding-officer finds that the battalion is moving up to action, he will order the knap-

is to challenge the rounds, who are to answer, *Grand round*, whereupon he is to rest his firelock. When the grand rounds are challenged near the quarter or rear-guards, the sentry, upon being answered *Grand rounds*, is to reply, *Stand, grand rounds*, and call to turn out the guard, nor is he to suffer the rounds to advance, till all the requisites are performed.

The officer commanding the quarter-guard is to order a Serjeant and a file of men to advance within six paces of the rounds, and there to halt and challenge again. When answered, *Grand rounds*, he replies, *Stand, grand rounds, Advance, Serjeant, with the parole*, and then orders his file of men to rest their firelocks: the Serjeant of the grand rounds then advances unattended and gives the parole to the Serjeant of the guard, who at the same time is to hold the spear of his halbert at the other's breast.

The Serjeant of the rounds returns; and the Serjeant of the guard, leaving his escort to prevent the rounds advancing, goes to the officer of the guard and delivers to him the parole he received from the Serjeant of the rounds.

The officer, finding the parole to be right, orders his Serjeant back to his escort, and says, *Advance, grand rounds*, commanding his guard to rest their firelocks: at the same time the Serjeant orders his men to wheel back from the center, and make a lane for the rounds to go through: the field-officer goes along the front of the guard; and when he comes to the officer, he receives the parole from him.

He may count the number of men under arms; and, when he has asked such questions, and given such orders, as he judges necessary, he passes on, and the officers of the guard order his men to lodge their arms.

Sacks,

facks, tent-poles, pins, kettles, and canteens to be laid aside.

A soldier that quits his rank or begins the action without orders to be put to death that instant.

If the battalion attack a body less in extent than them, they must be careful to direct their fire obliquely, so as to strike upon the enemy.

The soldiers are to take their orders from the officers who are directed to give them the word of command; as a cool, well levelled fire, with their firelocks carefully loaded, is more destructive than the quickest in confusion.

Every officer and non-commissioned officer is to keep to his post from the beginning to the end of the action, unless ordered by the Commanding-officer to another.

If any non-commissioned officer or private man is missing after the action, and joins his battalion afterwards, he will be tried for his life.

When the files are broke in action, the battalion is to incline from the right and left to the center, and the officers and non-commissioned officers in the rear are to make them do it with expedition.

The battalion to have field-days as often as the weather and circumstances admit of.

When the battalion is ordered under arms, each company is to parade at its Commanding-officer's quarters, and to be drawn up in a single rank, divided into three equal parts;

The { Tallest { Men { Right.
 { Next size { on the { Left.
 { Lowest in the Center.

The officers to take care they are exactly sized, uniformly dressed, their arms clean and unloaded, the locks in perfect good order, and well flinted; that their bayo-

nets fix well, and that they have their due quantity of ammunition, with or without ball, as ordered.

When the companies are thus ranged in a single rank,

The $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Captain's} \\ \text{Lieutenant's} \\ \text{Ensign's is in the center.} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Post is} \\ \text{on the} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Right.} \\ \text{Left.} \end{array} \right.$

Each at four paces advance before the men ; the Serjeants on the right of all in a line with the men, the Corporals next to them, and then the Drummers and Fifers : each company thus formed, is to be divided into two or four divisions, and marched by their respective officers to the place appointed for their assembling the battalion ; the Captain leads the first division, the Ensign the second, and the Lieutenant brings up the rear.

If it marches in four divisions, the Captain leads the first, and the Ensign the third ; the eldest Serjeant on the right of the front rank division ; the second Serjeant on the left of the front rank of the last division ; and the third Serjeant on the right of the front rank of the division the Ensign leads : the Drummers and Fifers between the front and center rank of the first division ; the pioneer, with his arms advanced, marches twelve paces before the Commanding-officer of the company, and when they arrive at the place appointed for assembling the battalion, the companies, &c. are to draw up as follows :

The eldest Captain's company of the battalion on the right ; the second Captain's company on the left ; fifth Captain's company on the right ; sixth Captain's company on the left ; third Captain's company on the right ; fourth Captain's company on the left ; Colonel's company on the right of the center of the battalion, and Lieutenant-colonel's company on the left ; the grenadier company at ten paces from the right of first Captain's company, and the light-infantry company at the same distance from the left of the second Captain's company :
the

the pioneers at four paces distance in a rank entire on the right of the grenadiers, and the field-pieces at four on the right of them : so soon as the field-pieces and each company wheels in order to come up to its ground, the officers recover their arms, the Drummers and Fifers beating and playing the troop (but are not to advance to the front, as formerly practised) and are to continue so to do till the officers are at their ground, when they are to cease ; the pioneers advance twelve paces, face to the right and march on till they join the pioneer of the first Captain's company, then the Corporal of the pioneers will turn the whole to the right, and march in a rank intire till they come in a line with the grenadiers, then turn them to the right about, and dress in a line with front rank of grenadiers.

So soon as the officers have marched up to their ground, they are to come to the right about, and having dressed their ranks, the Captain (or officer commanding the company) gives notice to his subaltern or subalterns, and then they come to the left about, ordering their arms at the same time.

The Serjeants, when the companies move up, quit the flanks and form a rank in the rear, ordering their arms also ; then a Serjeant of each company forms their odd men in the rear, if they have any, and the Serjeant-major forms the whole into files, and draws them up in the intervals between each company.

The Adjutant then faces each company one after the other to the right, and joins them at the same time, receiving from each Commanding-officer of companies a field return, the same as in page 126, only with this difference, as that is intended for the return of the regiment, it must be said, *Field Return of ——— Company* ; and the companies being closed, the Drum and Fife-major order their orderly Drummers and Fifers to take

post on the right of the Major in the front; the grenadiers and light-infantry ones remain always with their own companies; the rest to be disposed of in the battalion according to their number in the field; the music in the center.

The Adjutant and Serjeant-major is then to spring from the right and left of the battalion, dressing most exactly every rank, and seeing that the officers and non-commissioned officers are always in a line.

The whole battalion being drawn up, and the ranks at their proper distance, the Major orders the colours to be sent for (see method page 118) as also for the battalion to fix bayonets and shoulder, ready to receive the reviewing General.

The General being within twenty yards of the right flank of the right hand field piece, the Major orders, battalion, present your arms, and then I would have him take his post on the right of the grenadiers (not as is customary on the right of the first Captain's company) and the Adjutant on the left of the light-infantry company, dressing with the front rank, and as the General passes along, the officers are to salute him with their espartoons or fuzees, and they must so time it, that each may finish his salute and pull off his hat (or if cap officers, raise his hand to it) when he comes opposite to him; the Ensigns also to drop their colours, bringing the spear pretty near the ground, just when the Colonel or officer commanding the battalion, drops the point of his espartoon or fuzee, pulling off their hats together, and the colours to remain so till the General has passed: the Major and Adjutant salute with their swords, and pay no compliment of the hat, and when the former has finished his, he will take post before the center of the battalion, and face them when the General goes round; *To the left, To the left, To the left, To the left;*
and

and then shoulder the battalion; then close the rear ranks to the front.

To the right wheel by companies; March; they wheel, open ranks, and march by the reviewing General, saluting him as they pass.

Then the battalion is to be formed on the same ground they marched from, and the General having placed himself opposite to the center of the battalion, to present their arms; all the Drummers and Fifers to play the march so soon as the men come down to the rest; the Major then raising his sword and dropping the point, gives the signal for all officers to salute together, and the Ensigns drop their colours: the whole having pulled off their hats together, are to remain so till the Major raises the point of his sword, on which the officers are all to put on their hats together, see plan 1.

N. B. If it be a Major-general who reviews (and of course was received without bayonets being fixed) the Major is to order the bayonets to be fixed, then to present their arms, and salute as above; this being a part of the exercise (and no compliment to him) after which he is to order the battalion to unfix bayonets and shoulder.

When the officers take post in the rear, to prepare the battalion ready for exercise, the Major orders a ruffle for the officers and serjeants; upon the first clam they recover their arms; second they go to the right about; third, they step off with their right feet; fourth, they come to the left about; fifth, order their arms: for a further explanation, see plan 2.

A ruffle is then given to perform the manual exercise, and which by disciplined corps is now done by one clam from the whole; yet on account of young recruits must sometimes be performed agreeable to page 181.

The manual being over, a ruffle is given for the officers and serjeants; first flam, they recover their arms; second, they step off with their left feet; and on the third they order their arms; the field piece that covers the left of the battalion, is to move off and take post there.

Rear Ranks close to the Front.

At which word of command the officers and serjeants advance their arms, the officers going to the right about at the same time; on the word *March*, the rear ranks and officers step off together, the officers taking post on the flank of their companies, and the serjeants covering them: the battalion is now formed in charging order, see plan 3. then, *Prime and Load.*

F I R I N G S.

BY companies from the right and left to the center, two rounds; twice from the center to the right and left by companies; once by grand divisions from the right and left to the center; by four right-hand companies and the grenadiers, and the four left-hand companies, and the light-infantry, one round; right wing of the battalion and left wing, one round; battalion obliquely to the right and to the left, one round each; battalion to the front, one round by the above firings, advancing and retreating: left-hand companies and the grenadier company before they retreat by files, and the four right-hand companies and the light company, when marched up to their intervals, one round each; in the square by the faces and companies, one round each; street firing, advancing and retreating, one round each:

A volley standing, and then

Charge bayonets.

Halt.

Halt.

Shoulder.

Prime and Load.

Battalion, March; To the right wheel by grand division: they wheel to the right a quarter of a circle, taking care neither to open nor close their ranks; Grand divisions close to half distance.

Form the square.

The front and rear divisions keep moving on very slow, and the right-hand companies of the other two, wheel to the right; so soon as they have performed their wheelings, they turn to the left, and form the right face of the square, while the left-hand companies move contrarywise, and form the left: the pioneers, grenadiers, and light-infantry march into the square.

If the square marches by beat of drum, or sound of fife, when they cease, the square must front outwards; and the Commanding-officer, Major, Adjutant, Music, and orderly Drummers and Fifers go into it.

Suppose we have got clear of the enemy's foot, but their cavalry having drove ours out of the field, are moving down upon us in squadrons; in this case, the battalion will receive them in the order of plan 4, but while the foot are able to come up to us, must never be attempted *.

If

* This was the case of the Dutch infantry on the plains of Fleury, in 1690, where their cavalry having misbehaved, left the infantry to shift for themselves, when Prince Waldeck, who commanded the Dutch forces, formed sixteen battalions into one square, who made their retreat over those plains, till they got under the cannon of Charleroy; notwithstanding all, the French cavalry made several attempts to break in upon them, yet could not, for want of their foot, which could not come up. Another instance of this kind was, when the Duke of Marlborough, in 1705, passed the French lines in Brabant,

If any part of the square should be hard pressed, the grenadiers and light-infantry are to be ordered to support that part, or to rush out upon the enemy.

How to act in case the three squadrons not fired upon, should wheel about and retreat.

This is an object of attention, and requires the greatest conduct in the Commanding-officer of the battalion; for the least blunder puts all in confusion, especially among the infantry; the officers of which will find it a very difficult task to keep their ranks from breaking, if they are hard pressed by the cavalry; and if they are once broke, the havoc they make among the infantry is by experienced officers too well known.

Reduce the square.

The front and rear faces continue marching; the right-hand companies of the two center divisions wheel to the left by files, and the left-hand companies in the like manner to the right.

When the Commanding-officers of companies see them join, they will give the word, *To the front turn*: the grenadiers and light-infantry will then move off in files by the quick step; the grenadiers to the front of the first right-hand grand division, and the light-infantry to the rear of the fourth grand division; when the officers com-

manding

Brabant, where, after he had drove the enemy's horse out of the field, there were ten Bavarian battalions that stuck together, and formed themselves into a square, our infantry not being able to get up with them; they defended themselves against all the cavalry of our right wing, until they got under the walls of Lovain. But the most extraordinary instance was that of three battalions of the Regiment of Alsace, making a stand against eighty squadrons of horse, and marching off without the loss of a man. Which plainly shews, that if a body of foot have but resolution to keep their order, there is no body of horse will venture within their fire.

manding

manding those companies will bring them to their proper fronts.

To the left form battalion:

Upon which the grenadiers, light-infantry, and battalion companies wheel to the left and form; the pioneers taking post in the rear of the Lieutenant-colonels, and then the battalion advances.

I shall now suppose the cavalry are moving off as fast as they can, and consequently faster than the battalion can with safety pursue them; in this situation all that the Commanding-officer can do, is to keep up a constant fire upon them so long as the shot will reach them, taking care that the men level well, and keep their ranks well dressed; but if the cavalry attempts to return again to the charge, it will be necessary for the battalion to form the square, lest the former should move down in column, which they would be apt to do*.

Second Method of forming and reducing the Square.

IF the battalion is marching in grand divisions,

Close to half distance.

Form the square.

The front and rear divisions keep moving on very slow, and the right-hand companies of the other two,

* The Prussian cavalry execute three manner of charges, one directly straight before it, without deflecting either to the right or left; in the second, it turns off to the right for outstretching the enemy's line by a squadron or two; in the third, it bears to the left, for outstretching the enemy's right flank. All these charges are performed at full gallop; at the first word of command, *March*, the line immediately moves in a trot; at the second, it puts on a gallop, and thus it proceeds five or six hundred paces, till at the command, the whole stops and dresses.

wheel

wheel to the right: so soon as they have performed their wheelings, they turn to the left, and form the right-hand face, while the left-hand companies move contrarywise and form the left; the pioneers go into the square, and the grenadiers march obliquely to the right, and leave an interval for the front of the square, with which they dress; the light-infantry march also obliquely to the left, and dress with the rear face of the square: the field-piece that was on the right of the battalion, covers the angle of the right and rear face, and the other piece that of the left of the front face, and right of the left face, and the square being halted, see plan 5.

Reduce the square.

The front and rear faces continue marching, the right-hand companies of the other two divisions wheel to the left by files, and the left-hand companies in the like manner to the right: when the Commanding-officers of companies see them joined, they will give the word of command,

To the front turn.

The grenadiers and light-infantry will move off and take post, as also the pioneers, as directed in the former directions for reducing the square, and the field pieces are to return to their posts.

Take care to form battalion.

Upon which the divisions are to gain their proper distance,

To the left wheel; March; Halt.

The battalion is then formed in charging order, see plan 3.

To form an oblong Square by Companies on the March.

Close to half distance.

Form the oblong square.

The

The eight battalion companies being told off in two platoons, they wheel to the right and left in every respect as directed for forming the square by grand divisions, with this difference, that the grenadiers form the front face, and the light-infantry the rear face; the pioneers march into the square.

Halt.

On which the square stands fast.

Reduce the square.

The pioneers wheel as before directed for reducing the square by grand divisions.

March to close order.

The companies close up.

Form battalion.

The grenadiers turn to the right, and march by files to their post on the right; the first Captain's company stands fast, the other seven companies, the light-infantry, and pioneers turning to the left, march by files: when the fifth Captain or officer commanding his company sees he has ground enough to form on the right of the first Captain's company, he gives the word, *To the front turn*, upon which it marches up, joins and dresses; when the officer orders them to

Halt.

And so on in like manner the other six companies, light-infantry, and pioneers, which last takes post in the rear of the Lieutenant colonel.

To form Column by Companies from the Center.

THE two center companies move on slowly, while the grenadiers and light-infantry advance obliquely, and take post at the front of the center companies; the three battalion companies on the right face to the left, and the

the three on the left face to the right, and march off by files.

When the officers see their companies join, they are to give the word of command,

To the front turn.

On which the column is formed, see plan 6.

Form battalion.

The two center companies keep moving without gaining any ground; the grenadiers and light-infantry march by files to their posts on the flanks of the battalion, and the six battalion companies face to the center and march by files, and as soon as they have got ground enough to march in front, the officers of companies will give the word *To the front turn*: when they have got up, a signal, or word of command is given from the center, for the battalion to move forward.

Second Method.

Grand divisions to the center form column by files to the front; March.

EACH grand division leads out by files, and marches obliquely towards the center and forms in one body on the march.

The grenadiers and light-infantry advance obliquely and take post at the head of the grand divisions: the column is then formed, see plan 7.

Take care to form battalion.

The grenadiers and light-infantry face outwards, and march by files to their posts, during which time, the grand divisions are turned to their front and gain their proper distance.

Form battalion.

They wheel, form, and dress.

Grand divisions to the rear; form column by files; March.

By

By files they lead out to the rear, marching obliquely towards the center, and form in one body on the march: the column is then formed.

Take care to form battalion.

The grenadiers, light-infantry, and grand divisions turn to their fronts, and gain their proper distance.

Form battalion.

They wheel and form.

Third Method of forming Column.

By grand divisions form column to the right; March.

THE battalion are now supposed to be in one line: the grand division on the right marches twelve paces, the second eight paces, the third four paces, and the fourth on the left stands fast. When the divisions have made the number of paces ordered, the three divisions on the left, with the light-infantry, face to the right, and march by files, till they cover the right-hand grand division; which then receives the word from the officer, *To the front, turn*: the grenadiers march obliquely to the left, till they come opposite the center of the first grand division; and the light-infantry cover the rear of the column.

March to close order.

They close up to the front, and complete the column.

Form battalion.

The grenadiers turn to the right, and march by files to their former post; the first grand division stands fast; and the other three, with the light-infantry in the rear, turning to the left, keep marching by files. When the officer commanding the second division sees he has ground enough to form on the left of the first grand division, he gives the word, *To the front turn*; on which it marches up and joins the first grand division: two divisions,

divisions, and that of the light-infantry, form in the same manner.

From the right advance by files.

The three right-hand files of the grenadiers and light-infantry, as also that of the battalion, move forward, the rest face to the right and follow the advancing files.

To reduce.

The three right files stand fast; the others face to the left, and wheel to the right.

To advance from the right by wings.

The three right files of each wing, grenadiers and light-infantry, move forward, the rest face to the right and follow.

To reduce.

The three right files of each stand fast, the rest face to the left, and wheel to the right.

To advance from the right of grand divisions.

The three right files of each, grenadiers and light-infantry, advance, the rest face to the right and follow.

To reduce.

The three right files stand fast, the rest face to the left, and wheel to the right.

To advance from the center of the battalion.

The six center files move forward, the grenadiers and light-infantry advance by files; the wings of the battalion face inwards and march by files, following the center.

To reduce.

Except the six center files, the whole face outwards, when each wheeling to the center form the battalion.

To advance from the center of wings.

The six center files of each wing move forward, the grenadiers and light-infantry advance by files, the flanks of each wing face right and left to the center and follow.

To

To reduce.

The six center files of each wing stand fast, the others face outward, and wheel to the center and form battalion.

From the center of grand divisions advance by files.

The six center files of each grand division advance, the rest face to the center of each grand division and follow; the grenadiers and light-infantry advance by files.

To reduce.

The six center files of each grand division stand fast, the rest face outward and wheel to the center.

From grand divisions form companies.

The right-hand company of each grand division continues marching forward; the left-hand companies turn to their right and march by files: when the officers see that they cover the right-hand companies, they will turn them to the front; while the grenadiers and light-infantry inclining to their right, cover the front and rear companies.

In this manner the battalion is to be formed into wings, grand divisions, companies, and platoons; the signal is the pioneers march. To form large bodies from small ones, the signal is the troop; on beating of which, if the battalion is marching in platoons, the right-hand ones of each company will keep moving, without gaining any ground; the left-hand platoons will march obliquely to their left, and form on the left of the right-hand ones: the grand divisions, in like manner, will be formed from companies, the wings from divisions, and battalion from wings.

In marching by the oblique step, in ranks, companies, sub or grand divisions, wings, battalion, or column, a particular attention must be paid by the officers, non-commissioned officers and soldiers, that they keep parallel to their front.

S

From

From three ranks to form two.

Every second and third file being told off from the right opens an interval sufficient for a file to march into.

March.

The men in the rear of each file face to the left and come up with a quick pace into the interval.

From two ranks to form three.

The men that moved up, fall back again into their former file.

Spring to the center.

Which forms the battalion.

*Second Method.**From three ranks form two.*

UPON which the files being told off front, rear, open, and interval; the right of the center rank doubles to the left of the right of the front rank; left of center rank covers him; the rear springs up to cover; battalion close to the center.

From two ranks to form three.

The men who moved up from the right of the center rank into the front, falls into its proper place, and the men that cover him into his; and as the battalion is on the march, the two ranks open to their former distance, and leave room for the men that doubled up to front, and the other that covered him to form their center rank again.

From three ranks form six.

The front files move forward, and the rear files cover them in the rear; spring to the center.

From six ranks form three.

The files now six deep, open an interval sufficient for

for the rear half files to march up again to their former post.

March.

The rear files move up, and the battalion is formed.

When a Battalion disperses, how it forms itself again.

THE great advantage of this consists in a battalion being able to form in a moment; therefore every officer, non-commissioned officer, and private man, must know his right-hand man, file, leader, and company, that he may, with the utmost quickness, be formed ready for whatever may present itself: when a battalion is suddenly alarmed, repulsed by the enemy, or has performed this evolution, it may be formed again with the utmost celerity. The Commanding-officer should therefore accustom his battalion to this evolution, in order that they may know how to form themselves when ordered.

Take care to disperse; March.

The officers, with the colours, march six paces forward.

A long roll.

By the two orderly drummers disperses the battalion.

To arms.

The battalion form, and the officers, non-commissioned officers, and private men, fall into their own files and dress by the colours.

N. B. The Commanding-officer ought to be careful of informing his men that their dispersion by an enemy is the greatest misfortune which can happen to a battalion; but that, even in this case, they are not to look upon the action as lost; for, by their being accustomed to rally, he may soon be able to form them again, and redeem their honour.

Battalion pass the bridge; March.

The grenadiers and light-infantry advancing briskly to the river, fire obliquely at the head of the bridge, till the front of the battalion comes up to it, when they should march and follow the battalion by files; the two center platoons of the battalion moving forward, the wings face to the center, and wheel by files in the rear of the center platoons. When the battalion has passed the bridge, the Commanding-officer should give the word of command,

Form battalion.

On which the two center platoons are to stand fast, and begin to fire by word of command from their respective officers; the other platoons marching on till the front file of each platoon comes close to the center platoons; then the officer commanding gives the word, *To the front turn*; when, marching to the right or left, they wheel up to their proper places in battalion, and begin to fire as soon as formed: the battalion keeps a continued fire from the center to the flanks (including the grenadiers and light-infantry) till the Commanding-officer orders them to cease, see plan 8.

Battalion repass the bridge.

The grenadiers and light-infantry, with the two center platoons, make ready, and the battalion faces outwards, Upon the word *March* to the battalion, the grenadiers, light-infantry, and center platoons, will begin firing. When the grenadiers and light-infantry have fired, they will march obliquely to the center, halt and fire, at least once, before they join in the front of the center platoons, who will have fired as often as possible.

March.

The right and left wing of the battalion counter-march in the rear, wheeling by files on the ground they stand

stand on, until the head files of each meet in the rear of the center platoons; at which time they wheel up and continue their march for the bridge. When the last files of the wings have wheeled, the two center platoons get the word of command from their own officers, *To the right about; March*—and march in the rear till the battalion have repassed the bridge: when the head files have passed, they wheel to the right and left outwards, taking care to observe the proper distance for the battalion to form: the center platoons will march four paces beyond the battalion, where they turn to the right and left outwards: the grenadiers and light-infantry will fire once after the center platoons go to the right about; they then recover their arms, and go likewise to the right about: when they have passed the bridge, and come close to the center platoons, they will turn to the right and left outward, and march by files along the rear of the battalion to their posts on the flanks; the Commanding-officer then gives the word of command, *Turn to the front; Halt*: which being done, the center platoons march up into their interval, and form battalion.

Battalion passing Defile with Cannon.

THE battalion having advanced in line to the defile,

By companies pass defile.

The center companies move forward; the wings face to the center and march by files, till the companies join in the center of the defile, when the officers will give them the word, *To the front turn*, the rest of the companies follow and do the same.

Form battalion.

The two center companies stand fast, the rest march up obliquely and form battalion.

N. B. The field-pieces are kept in the rear, as the enemy are supposed to be pursuing, see plan 9.

A retreat is justly considered as one of the most delicate and dangerous movements in war, therefore nothing should be neglected to make it secure and honourable: when the Commanding-officer of the battalion finds that he is inferior in number and goodness to that of his enemy, he should give them battle in a strong or close ground, and lest they might still prove too powerful for him, secure in his rear a thick wood, that in case of necessity he may pass through in India files *, by facing the battalion to the right about; afterwards form battalion again to charge the enemy before they could be formed, see plan 10. but above all things let me warn the young unexperienced officer against halting in the wood, or surrendering to the enemy if there is a possibility of retreating or defending yourself with any little success: but again, suppose you are attacked by a body of cavalry, and that you have wood and water in your rear, I would form battalion six deep, as in plan 11; and in case you found it absolutely necessary, I would pass the river, and a bridge may be made, by cutting down the trees that grow on the banks, and throwing them parallel to each other across the stream; fascines may be made of the boughs to cross them again, and the whole covered with fods, &c. the battalion, &c. pass over, and afterwards, if necessary, destroy it.

* To advance or retreat in Indian files, is to move off singly one after the other, the men trailing their firelocks, and the officers their arms, and it may be performed by battalion, wings, grand divisions, companies, or platoons; the use and nature of which is to pass through wood or defiles, so that your flanks by not being too large may pass with ease, and not be exposed to the fire of the enemy.

I shall

I shall now suppose the battalion marching by files on a road (the breadth sufficient for about fourteen men to march in front) and having cleared it, wants to attack an enemy who is pursuing, see plan 12. both views.

Those companies thus wheeled are to begin to fire upon the enemy as soon as they come within reach of musket shot; the companies nearest the road and that advanced on the other wing will begin to fire, and retire one after the other as the dots direct, from yellow to yellow, red to red, and green to green.

Those companies in the upper plan next the road face to the left by files and march to their post, and are turned to their front by their own officers; the other five companies move up obliquely to the right, dress and form battalion.

The companies of the lower plan will observe the same directions, only with this difference, that those next the road face to the right by files, and the other five companies advance to the left obliquely, and form battalion.

The battalion having marched by files through the center of the wood, gained ground to the right to figure 1. which gave the enemy reason to suppose they would not stand, so continued their pursuit; but to their no small surprize, the battalion turned to their front, then wheeled by companies to the left, and changed front; by the light-infantry wheeling to the left, and the other nine companies marching up obliquely and dressing with them, see plan 13.

As each company advanced up to its ground, they began firing on the enemy, in order to break them, before they have had time to pass the wood and form in firing order.

This unexpected manœuvre, and suffering greatly from our fire, their panick was such, as to oblige them to retire with precipitation, leaving their killed and wounded behind.

The Commanding-officer having exprefs orders to march with all diligence to join the grand army, did not think it consistent with his orders to pursue the enemy; beside, as they were well acquainted with the wood and its defiles, might possibly recover their disorder and take advantage of them.

Parole PEMBROKE. *Camp of Townsend, Aug. 20, 1777.*

After Orders.

THE grenadier and light-infantry companies, field-pieces, gunners, ammunition cart, the Corporal, and eight pioneers with their tools, are to march at twenty minutes after taptoo beating; upon beating of which, without the least noise, their tents must be struck, and the baggage immediately loaded, and the whole to move off at the time appointed, according to a route, which will be delivered to the officer commanding the party, with the following private instructions, &c. Having taking possession of *George Village*, you are to throw up a small post, see P. as also a breast work to cover the companies, and having taken the other necessary precautions, I shall now suppose the enemy advancing in line; but finding the artillery and the companies of those chosen men sufficiently formidable, and receiving a well levelled fire, ordered his battalion *To the right about*, and having marched some yards, wheeled them *To the left by companies*, and having passed the ford, see figure 2. and formed battalion in the rear of the river, see 1, plan 14.

IF

If this battalion should be reinforced and attempt to come to the attack again, remember *it is my most positive orders*, that you do not march out to engage them *, or abandon it, as such unfoldier-like conduct destroys all order, and makes it impossible for the officer commanding to form any disposition, and therefore puts it out of his power to put in execution his intended plan.

A battalion of the enemy is ordered to *Charlotte Village* to halt one night, and the next morning to pursue their route across the ford.

The Commanding-officer having a few days before been in disguise in the village, and finding no troops or works, took for granted it remained in the same state, and not having the prudentest officer foremost in his thought, did not reconnoitre †, but was marching by files into the village, not expecting that ten six pounders with a detachment of men had been thrown in; the former posted opposite the entrance, and covered over with bows of trees, and the latter in ambush in the wood, in case the enemy should push forward.

* *Posthumus the Dictator and Manlius Torquatus the Consul*, killed each of them his own son for marching out against a party of the enemy without orders, although they returned victorious. This was a sketch of discipline carried to extremity, and has been most justly censured by the military as an act of cruelty; and those Generals can only be justified by the examples inflicted on their sons, to stop the impression made on the army, by the greatness of the offenders.

† To view or reconnoitre, is to get as near a camp, garrison, town, or village, as possible, to see the nature of the ground, and the avenue to it; to find out their strength and weakness, where they may be best attacked, or whether it may be proper to bring them to action.

But

But no sooner had the cannon begun to play upon them, than they advanced from the left by grand divisions, and formed the column on the march, see plan 15, figure 1, shews the battalion marching by files, 2 in grand divisions, and 3 in column going to pass the ford; after which they will form battalion, when the grenadiers and light-infantry will take their former posts; they being now in the rear of column, to fire at whatever may present itself during their passing.

If a battalion with field-pieces is ordered to escort ammunition across a plain, I would march in order as represented in plan 16, and in case an enemy should attempt to attack you, I would wheel my battalion, platoons, and post my cannon, &c. as in plan 17, as that fire will be more destructive. If the reader will place himself facing the center of either face, and throw his eyes directly on it, he will see intervals, and consequently many shots would pass through; if afterwards he directs his eyes from the same points to the battalion platoons, he will not perceive the least openings through the files, and every ball fired in that direction from a soldier that levels well and takes good aim, must take effect.

If the general or officer commanding, from the course of the war, or the concurrences of circumstances has any reason that should determine him to detach a battalion, with orders to pass the river in his front by bridges of communication, and then to form a fixed camp,

The greatest precautions must be taken, that the situation is strong, that there is plenty of forage and water, &c. as a scarcity in either are known to make more havoc than the enemy: a particular attention must be had as to the salubrity of the ground, and that it is not commanded by any eminences.

The

The bridges being thrown over, the pioneers will hew down the trees, and as fast as they are stripped and pointed, the camp colour-men are to bring them to the ground of encampment, when the front, the right and left of which is to abbatis*.

The bridges are to be covered by raising a kind of bastions of earth twelve feet thick on each side, see plan 18, figure 1, chaplain's tent; 2, surgeon's; 3, officer's messing tent; 4, grand futlers; 5, petty futlers; 6, bastions; the other tents, &c. are too well known to require an explanation.

Attack of a Barrack.

THE battalion by a quick, stolen, forced march, being unsuspectedly arrived before the barrack in the night, the first thing to be considered is where and in what manner to pass the ditch and escalate the wall, for the enemy's guards and centries from a sense of being secure, perhaps are negligent of their duty, and may be easily surprized by a vigorous attack; but if on the other hand they have taken the alarm, the grenadiers and light-infantry companies should be divided into small bodies, making feints in order to draw them on, to make some false movement; the grenadiers should throw grenades at this time, and the light-infantry fire upon

* Abbatis, a defence much used to defend an encampment, a pass, entrance, &c. consists of trees hewn down, whose boughs are stripped of their leaves, and pointed. The method of pointing these trees is to have their trunks buried in the ground, and their boughs fastened, by interweaving them with each other: a small ditch must be dug towards the enemy, and the earth thrown up properly against the lower part of the defence, which will add to its strength, and render it very dangerous and difficult to pass.

those who should present themselves on the top of the wall.

The pioneers, and eight battalion companies, in one or more bodies are to endeavour to break open the gate, if it is not done by petards, &c. or escalade* ; if there are any houses or eminences that command the barrack, they must be possessed in order to fire on the enemy.

I shall now suppose the barrack taken, and that it was inclosed with a wall, and that on the next day one of the enemy's cavalry was perceived to be reconnoitring through some trees, I would then set fire to the village, &c. see plan 19.

Post your men in such a manner in the night, as to prevent an escalade ; and provide sticks, pitch-forks, &c. to overset the ladders, in case the enemy should attempt it.

Your next consideration must be the number of men that will be in the barrack, what provisions you can lay in, what quantity and quality, barrels of beer, or water,

* In order to succeed in the escalade, you must have a perfect knowledge of the place, that you may determine on which side it may be easily scaled ; though it will be very difficult to force an enemy who is apprized of your design : " But in the confusion which an unexpected attempt of this nature immediately causes, the enemy cannot think of every thing that is proper to be done, or at least cannot guard at all parts." He is attacked at several sides at once, in order to divide his forces ; it is not easy for him to distinguish the false attack from the true, wherefore he will be obliged equally to sustain all his parts, and while he is employed on one side the place is entered at another.

Scaling-ladders may be so made as to take to pieces in several parts or lengths, which renders them much easier to be transported from place to place ; beside, in case of necessity the soldier may carry one ; of this kind were those made use of to scale Geneva in 1602.

8c. If you should have a stream of water in your barrack-yard, it is likely the enemy would find means to cut it off; therefore, nothing should be left to chance: no person should be suffered to remain in the barrack, except such as are able to oppose the enemy, and are acquainted with the use of fire-arms, lest you have too many mouths for your provision.

The time and number of men required for the construction of a redoubt.

The excavation of the ditch being 122 toises*, will require,

Including the trimmers	140 men
To get fascines	235
To get pickets	145
To get palisades	180
	<hr style="width: 10%; margin: 0 auto;"/>
Total	700
	<hr style="width: 10%; margin: 0 auto;"/>

Seven hundred men will therefore be able to throw up a redoubt in eight hours, provided the materials are at hand, see plan 20. These kind of redoubts are very useful on many occasions, they frequently are sufficient to stop a whole army in a close or confined situation, or to blockade a town; to prevent your being harrassed or insulted on some critical march; to cover one of the wings of your army, or to occupy a larger piece of ground than the number of your troops will otherwise permit.

* Toise is a measure of six feet used by French engineers in all their fortifications. A square toise is thirty-six square feet; and a cubical toise is two hundred and sixteen cubical feet,

P O S T S C R I P T.

BEFORE I conclude I must beg leave to make one remark, lest an enemy may attack the battalion in the rear.

That it is absolutely necessary to accustom the battalion, *To use the rear rank as the front*, by firings or otherwise; for if the enemy is so near your rear as not to allow sufficient time to perform a manœuvre, you must retreat, or bring the battalion about, at which time the Commanding-officer with the colours, orderly Drummers and Fifers, will move up to the front of the center of the battalion, and the officers commanding platoons, &c. will spring up to the then front, and those who before covered them in the rear of the intervals, the Major, Adjutant, and supernumerary Officers, &c. will with all speed take post in the rear, by this manœuvre, the companies, &c. will be on the left of the battalion in place of the right.

But, perhaps, this method may be objected against, that it is the rear rank that is opposed to the enemy, and consequently that the manœuvre is not according to the common practice? but this I shall answer by saying, that one of the best disciplined battalions in the service constantly performed the firings and manœuvres, by making the rear rank act as the front, and as the real front is not lost, or rendered useless for becoming the rear, I cannot see any reason why it should not be constantly put in practice, as I apprehend the front is advantageously posted.

F I N I S.

Just published,

In Two Volumes, Octavo,

D E D I C A T E D,

BY PERMISSION,

T O T H E K I N G.

A

S Y S T E M

O F

MILITARY MATHEMATICS.

By LEWIS LOCHEE,

MASTER OF THE

MILITARY ACADEMY, LITTLE CHELSEA.

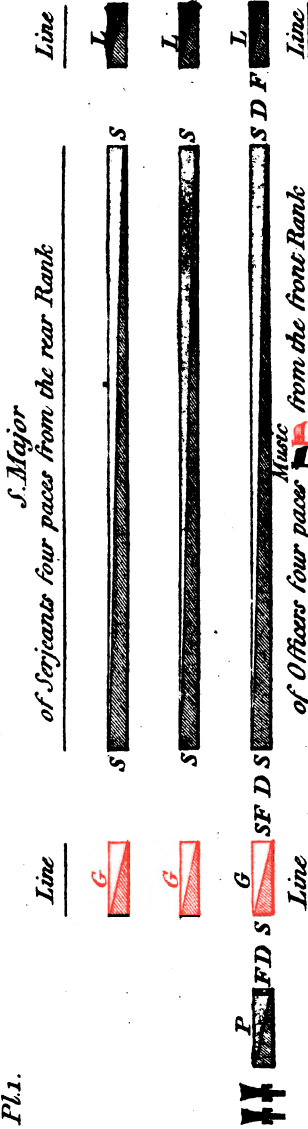
Printed for the AUTHOR;

And sold by T. CADELL, Strand.

At which Place may be had, just published,

SIMES'S MILITARY COURSE.

Pl. 1.



P, Pioneers
 F, Fijers
 D, Drummers
 S, Sergeants
 G, Grenadiers
 L, Light Infantry
 A, Adjutant

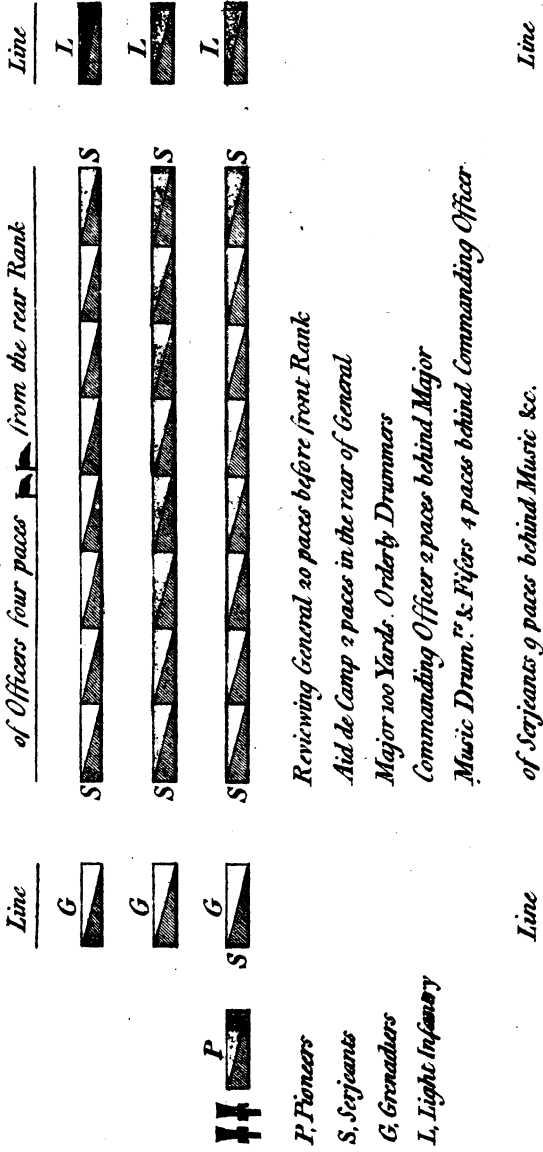
POSITION OF BATTALION AFTER GENERAL SALUTE.



Pl. 2.

Adjutant

S. Major



P. Pioneers

S. Sergeants

G. Grenadiers

L. Light Infantry

Reviewing General 20 paces before front Rank

Aid de Camp 2 paces in the rear of General

Major 100 Yards. Orderly Drummers

Commanding Officer 2 paces behind Major

Music Drum. & Fifers 4 paces behind Commanding Officer

of Sergeants 9 paces behind Music &c.

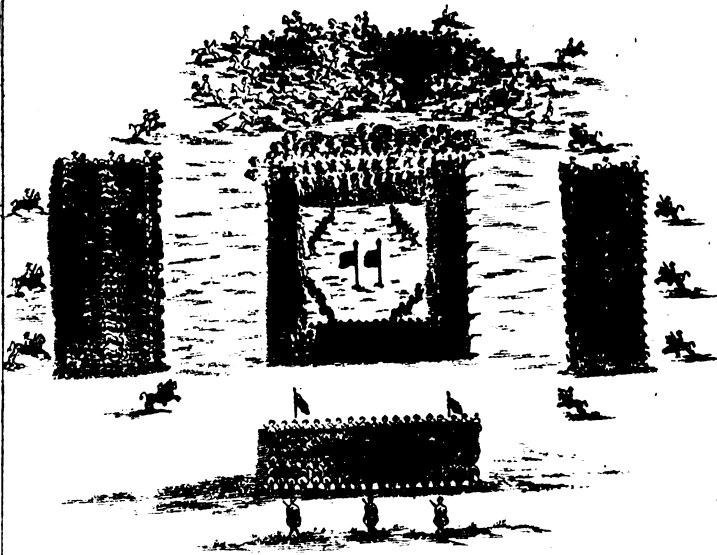
BATTALION READY FOR EXERCISE.



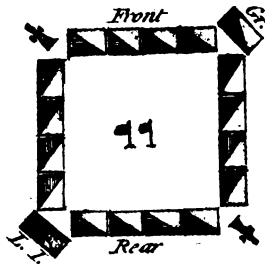


PLA.

SQUARE ATTACK'D by CAVALRY.



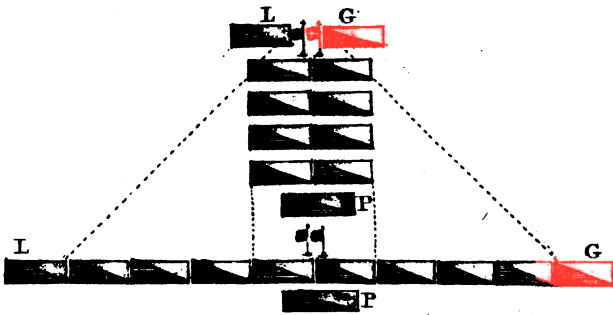
Pl. 5.



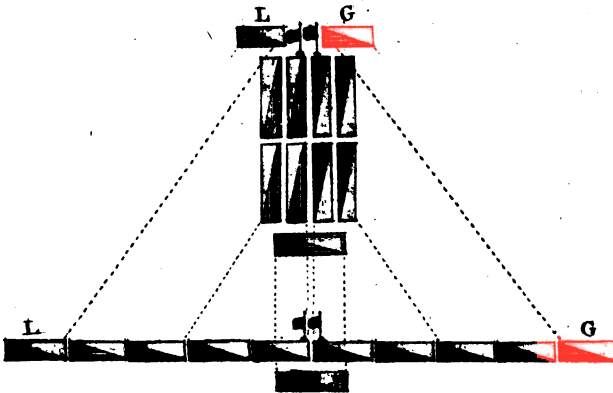
SQUARE FORMED with ANGLES OPEN.



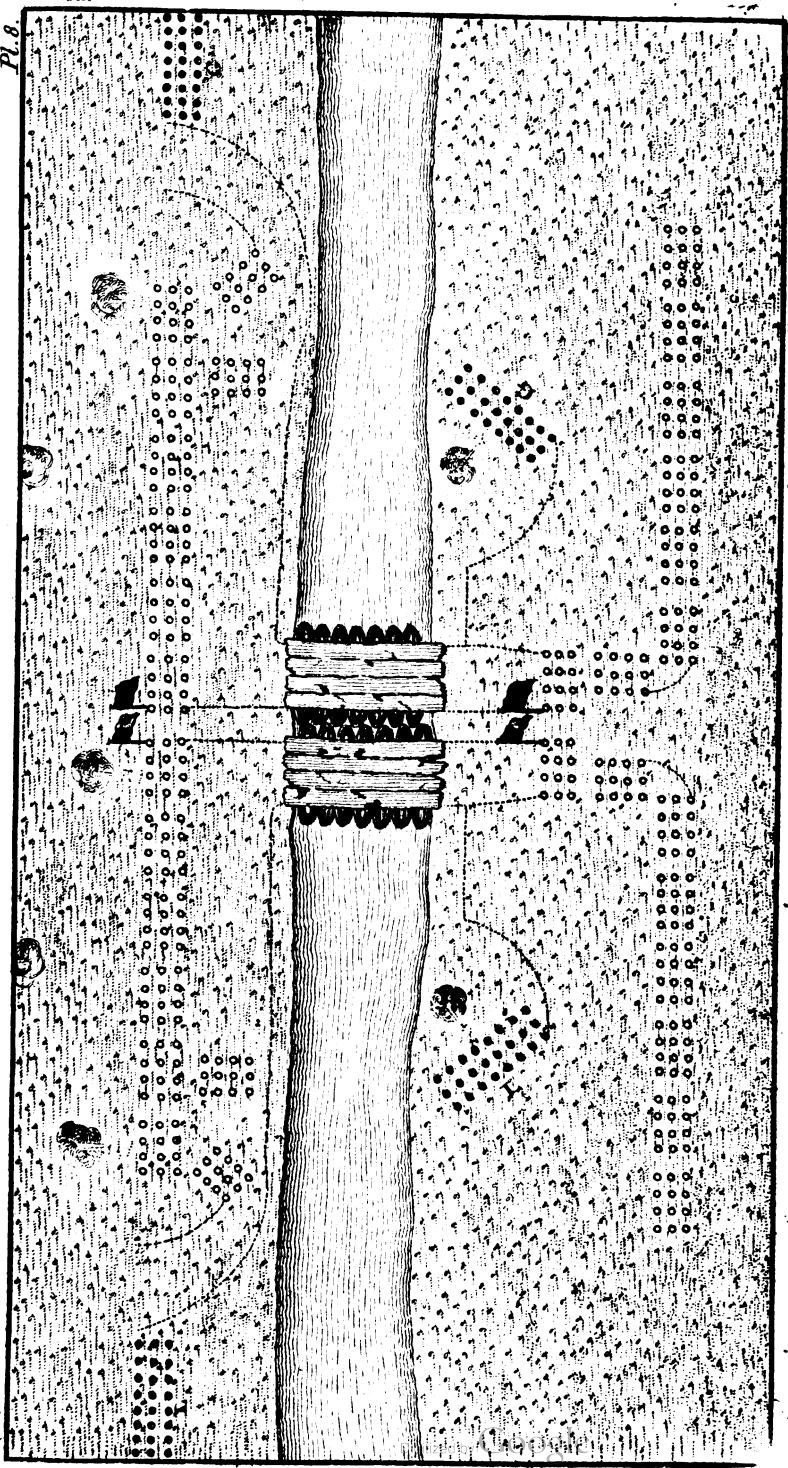
Digitized by Google



FORMING COLUMN *from the Center* by COMPANIES.

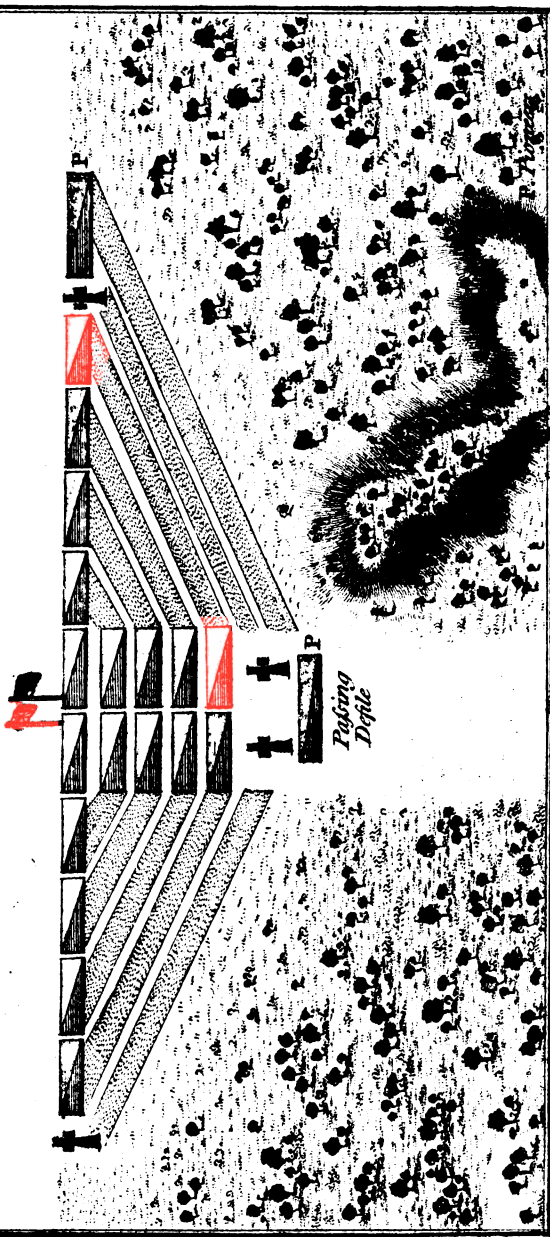


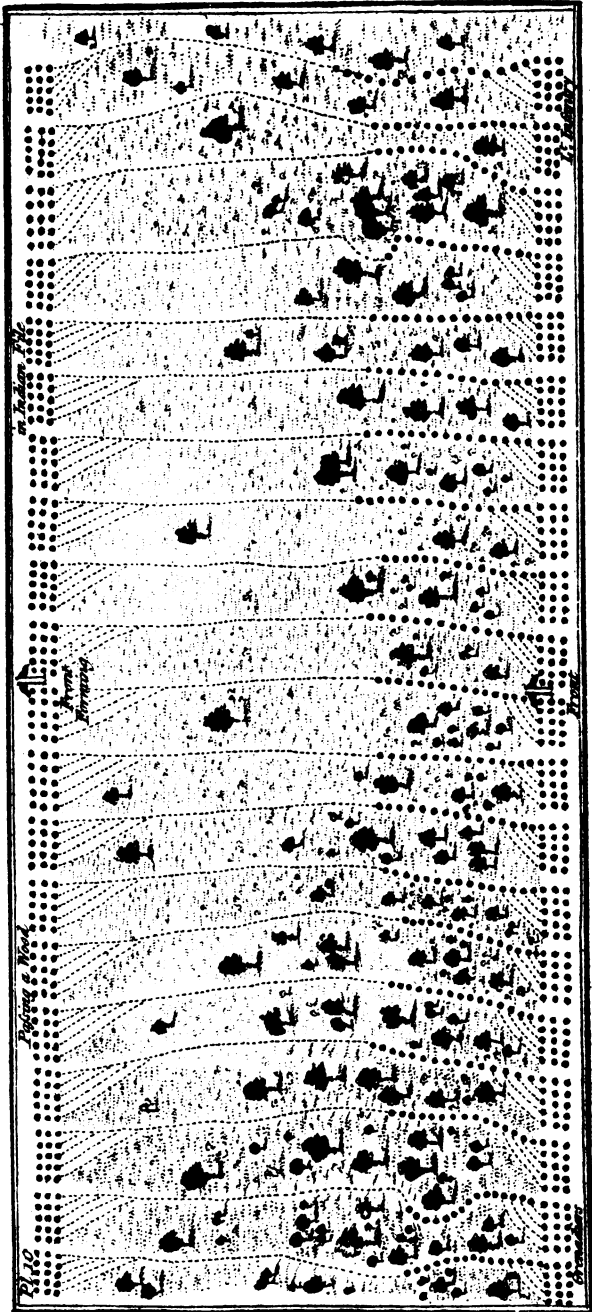
FORMING COLUMN *from the Center* by GRAND DIVISIONS.



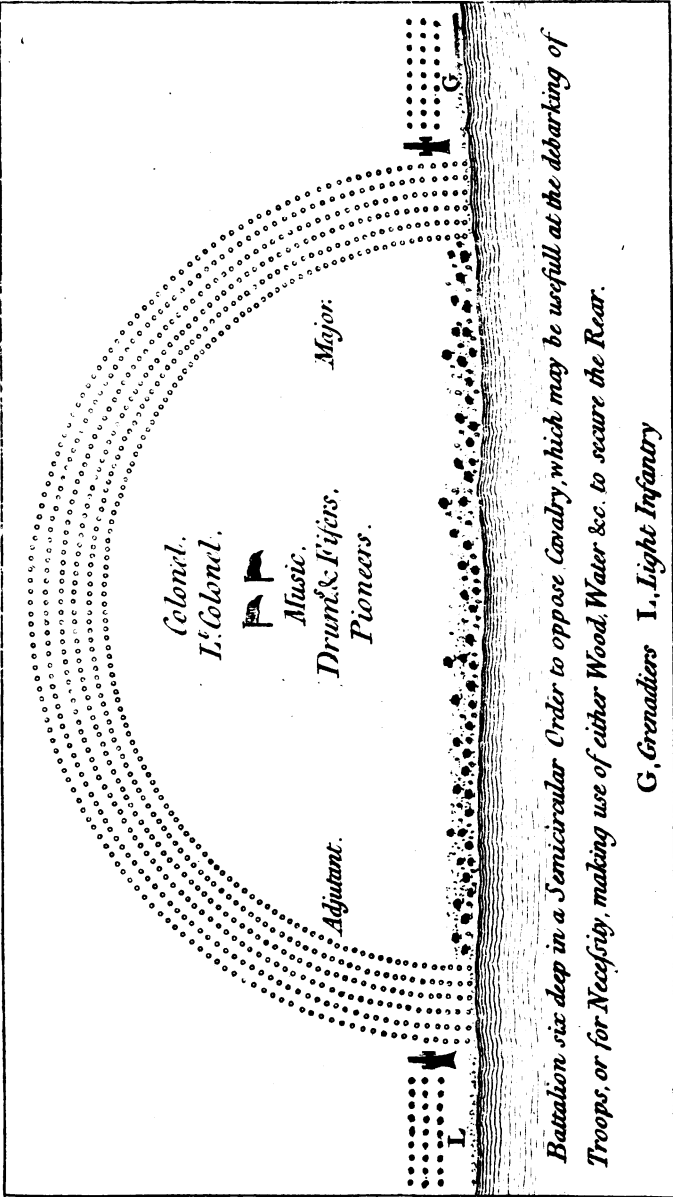


BATTALION FORMING BY THE OBLIQUE STEP.





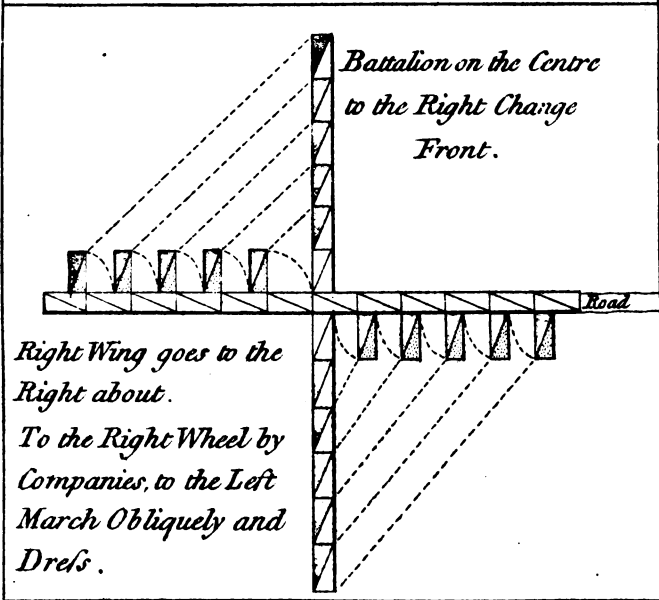
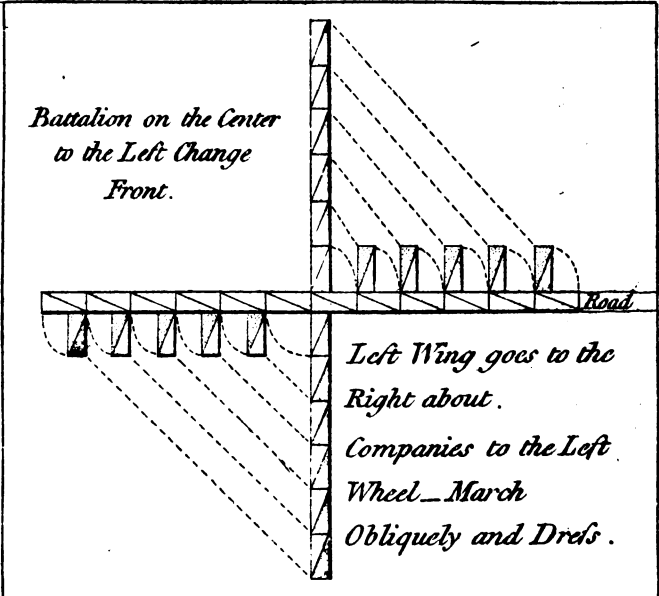




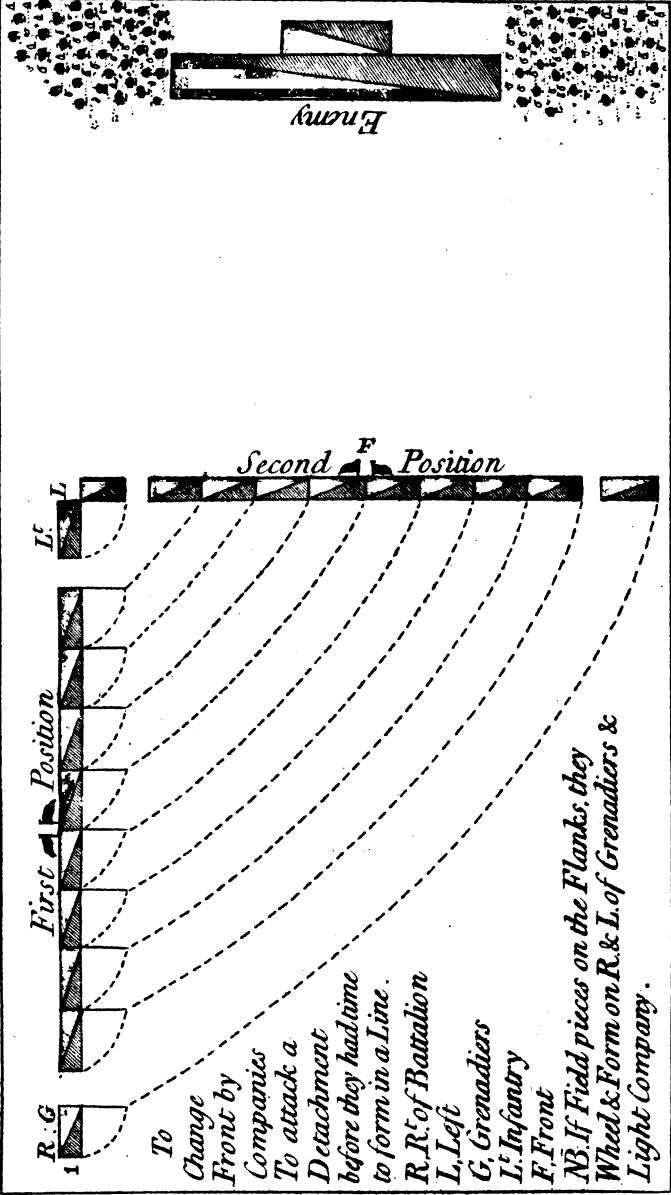
Battalion six deep in a Semicircular Order to oppose Cavalry, which may be usefull at the debarking of Troops, or for Necessity, making use of either Wood, Water &c. to secure the Rear.

G, Grenadiers L, Light Infantry

BOL



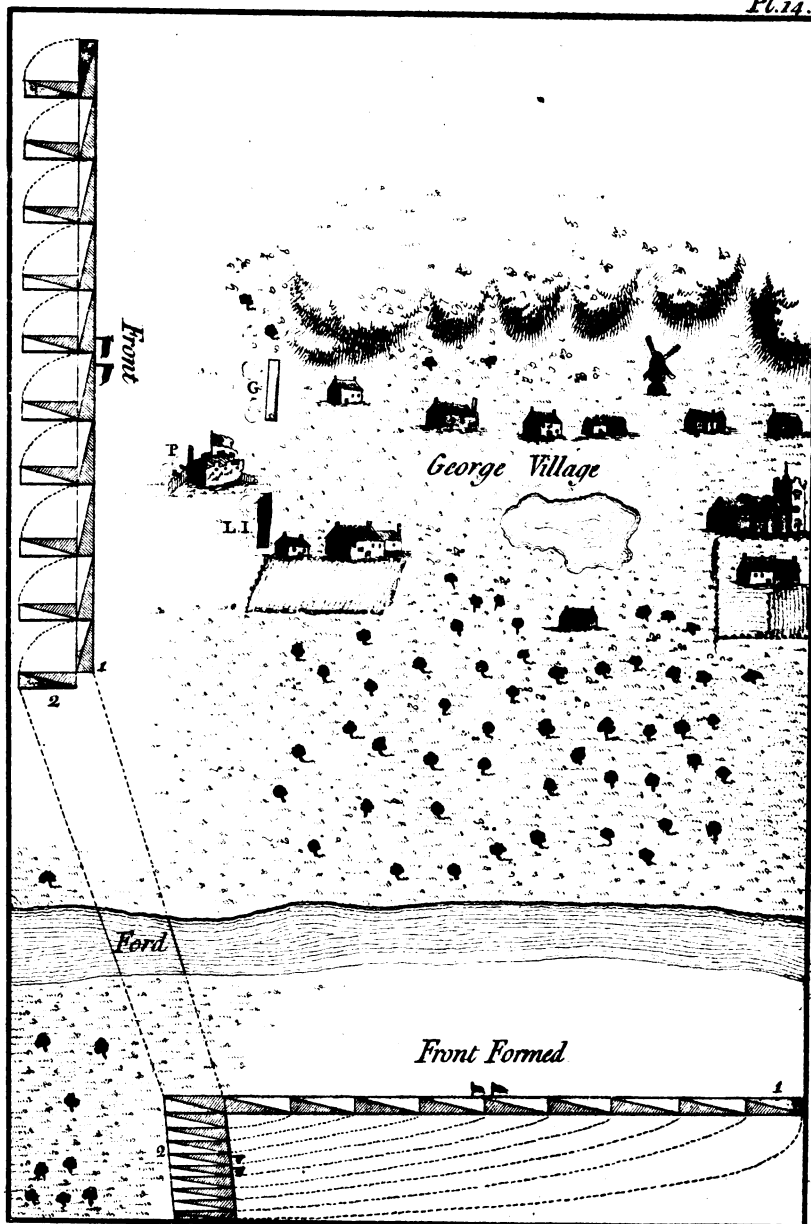
BOL



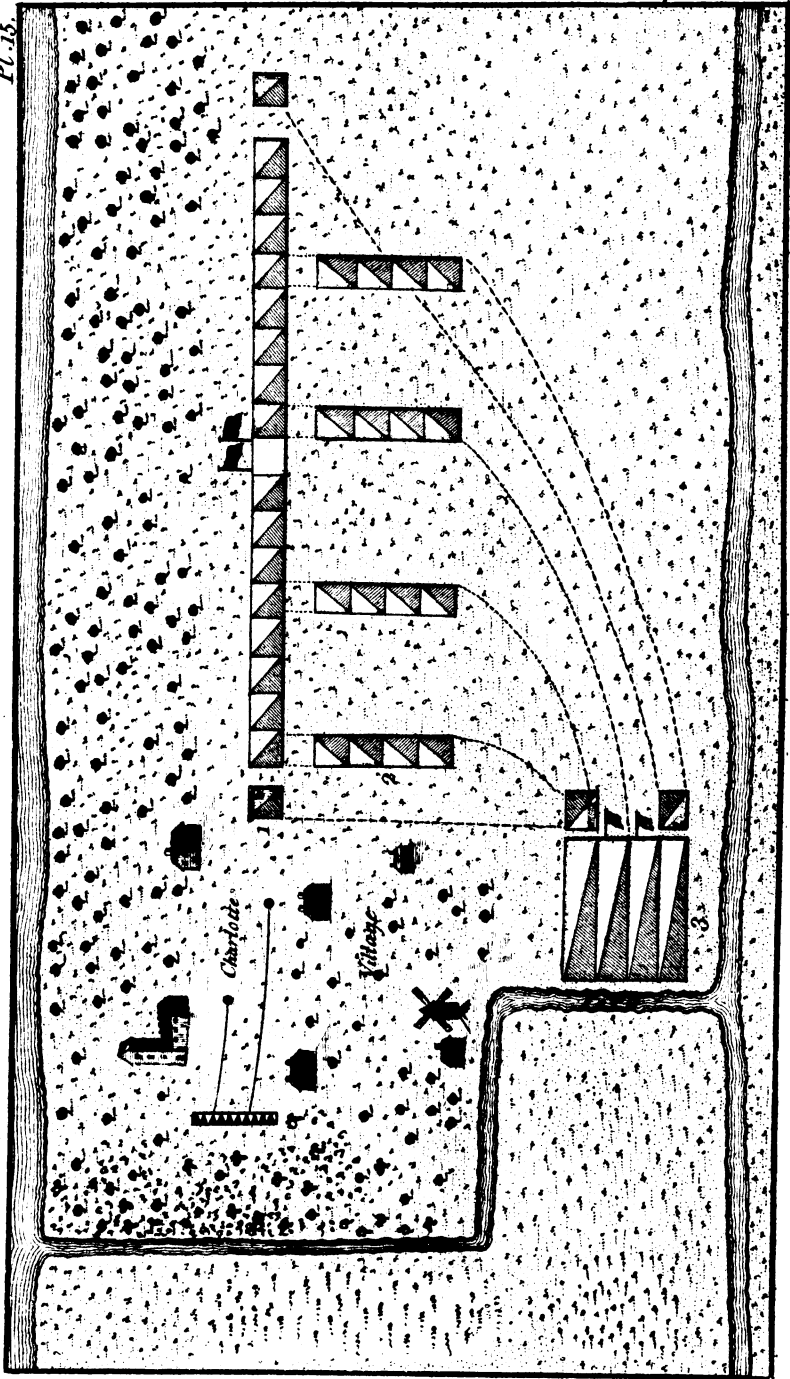
To
 Change
 Front by
 Companies
 To attack a
 Detachment
 before they had time
 to form in a Line.
 R.R. of Battalion
 L. Left
 G. Grenadiers
 I. Infantry
 F. Front

NB. If Field pieces on the Flanks, they
 Wheel & Form on R. & L. of Grenadiers &
 Light Company.





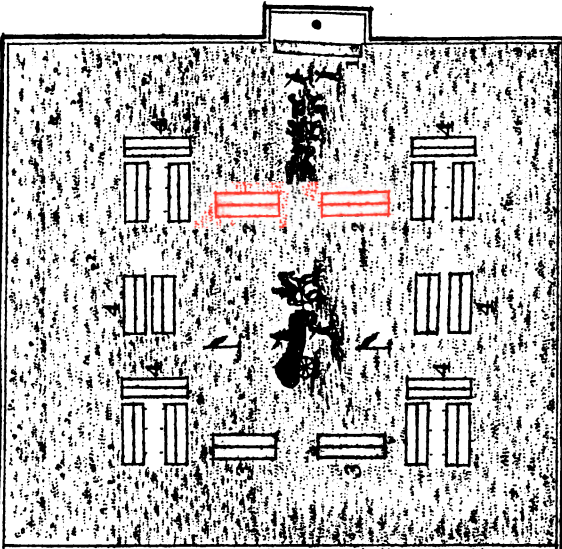






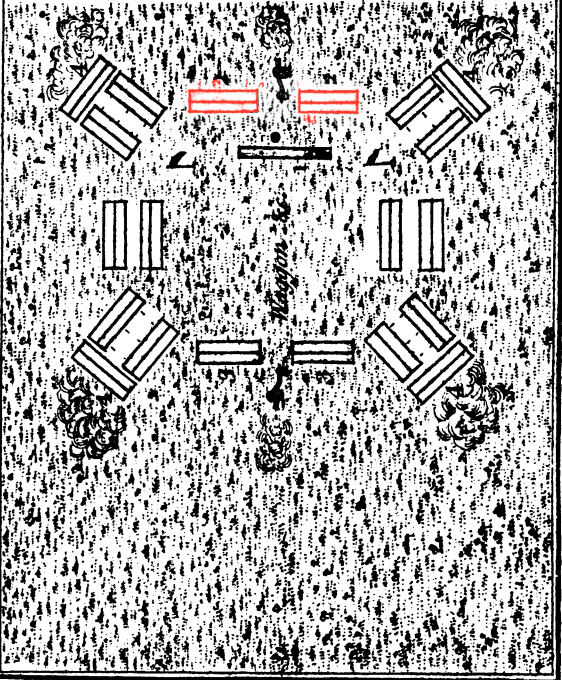
ESCORT

Pl. 16



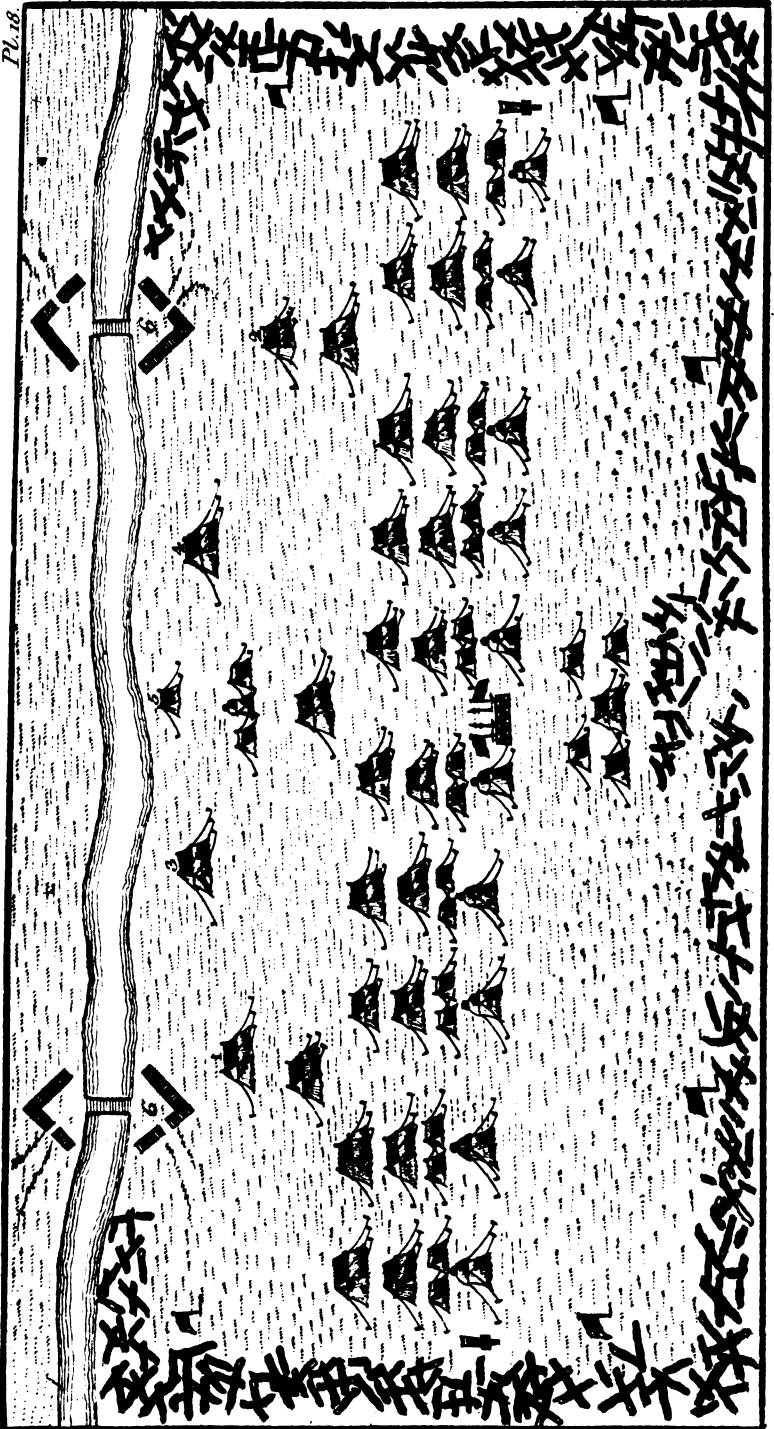
- 3. 1st Infantry
- 4. Machine Platoons.

Pl. 17

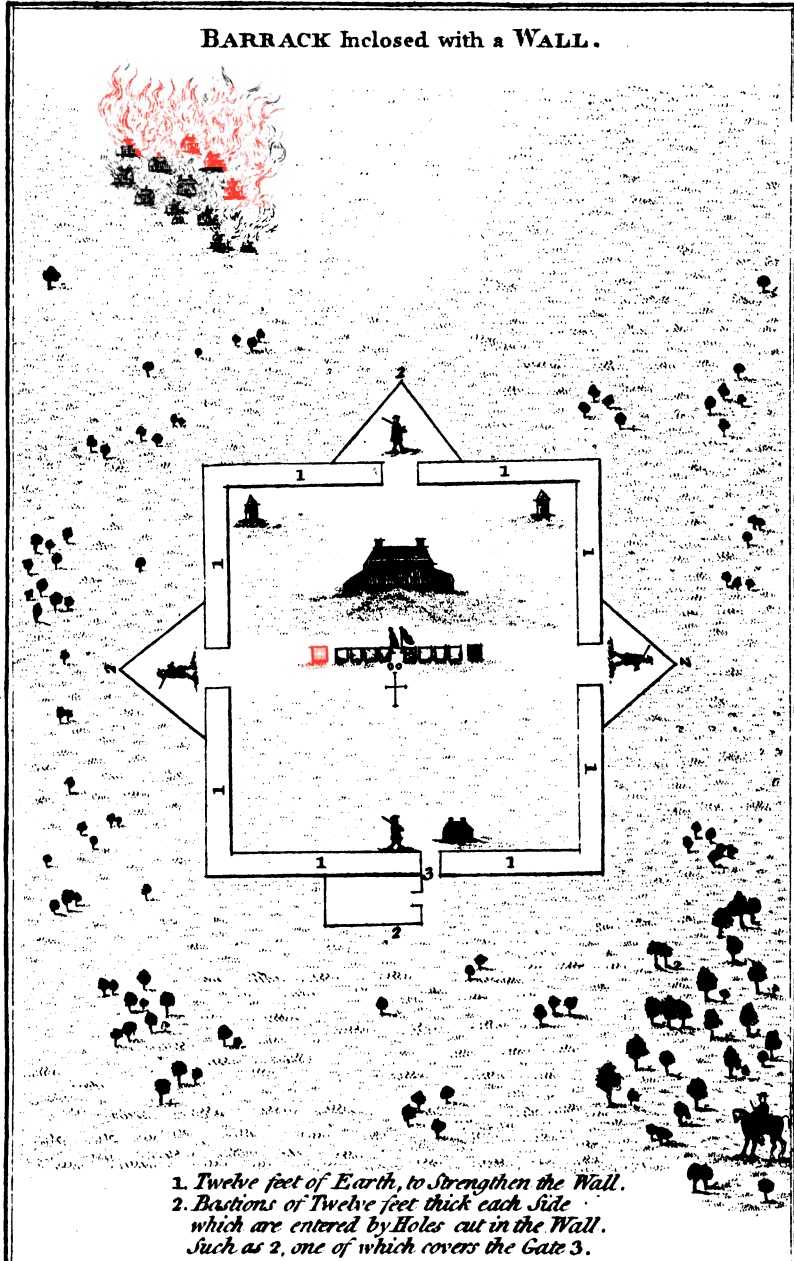


- 1. Pioneers.
- 2. Grenadiers.





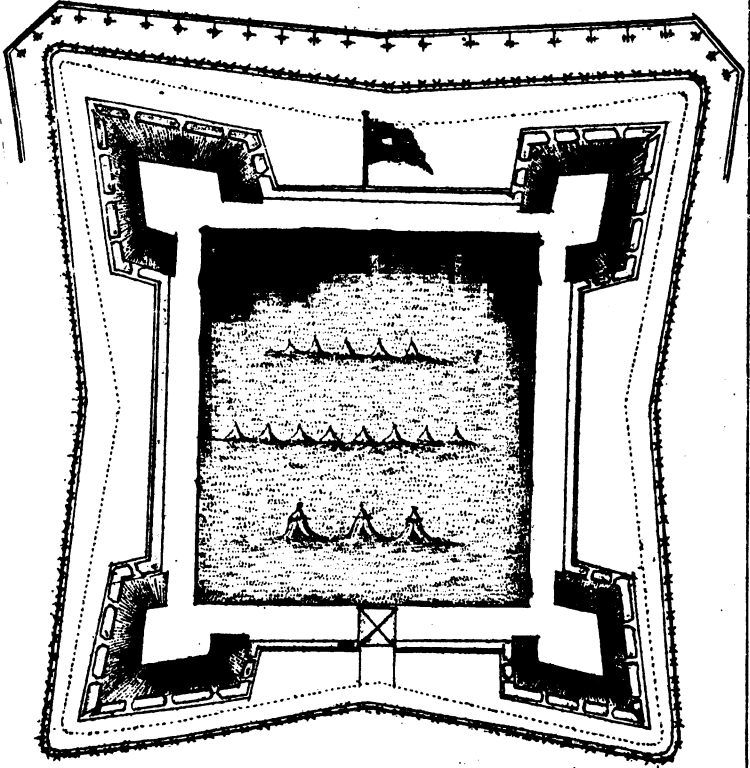
BARRACK Inclosed with a WALL.



1. Twelve feet of Earth, to Strengthen the Wall.
2. Bastions of Twelve feet thick each Side which are entered by Holes cut in the Wall. Such as 2, one of which covers the Gate 3.



REDOUBT.





2/02
195

15/06/4

PRESERVATION SERVICE

SHELFMARK RS23A.21781

**THIS BOOK HAS BEEN
MICROFILMED (20 65)
PSM**

MICROFILM NO SEE ESTC

